

Appendix C

Site-Specific Coding Modules

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

Table of Contents

Introduction to Appendix C	1
Oral Cavity	
Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: Head and Neck ¹	
Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations	5
Flowchart	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	17
Histology Coding Rules.....	22
Matrix	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	27
Histology Coding Rules.....	31
Text	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	35
Histology Coding Rules.....	37
CS Staging Schemas	
Lip, Upper.....	41
Lip, Lower	49
Other Lip.....	57
Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil	65
Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS.....	75
Gum, Upper	83
Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area Retromolar Gingiva (Trigone).....	91
Gum, NOS	99
Floor of Mouth.....	107
Hard Palate.....	115
Soft Palate, Uvula	123
Other Mouth.....	133
Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule.....	141
Surgery Codes: Oral Cavity ⁴	149
Parotid, Other and Unspecified Glands	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Head and Neck pg C-5 ¹	151
CS Staging Schemas	
Parotid Gland	153
Submandibular Gland	163
Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands.....	171
Surgery Codes: Parotid and Other Unspecified Glands ⁴	179
Pharynx, Tonsil, Oropharynx, hypopharynx, Pyriform Sinus	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Head and Neck pg C-5 ¹	181
CS Staging Schemas	
Tonsil, Oropharynx.....	183
Anterior Surface of Epiglottis.....	193
Nasopharynx	203
Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx.....	213
Pharynx, NOS, and other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites	223
Surgery Codes	
Pharynx ⁴	231
All Other Sites ⁴	233

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

Table of Contents, continued

Esophagus	
Coding Guidelines	235
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	237
CS Staging Scheme: Esophagus	239
Surgery Codes: Esophagus ⁴	245
Stomach	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	247
CS Staging Scheme: Stomach.....	249
Surgery Codes: Stomach.....	255
Small Intestine	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	257
CS Staging Scheme: Small Intestine.....	259
Surgery Codes: All Other Sites ⁴	265
Colon	
Coding Guidelines	267
Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: Colon ¹	
Equivalent Terms, Definitions and Illustrations	269
Flowchart	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	273
Histology Coding Rules.....	279
Matrix	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	291
Histology Coding Rules.....	295
Text	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	303
Histology Coding Rules.....	305
CS Staging Scheme: Colon.....	311
Surgery Codes: Colon ⁴	319
Rectosigmoid, Rectum	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	321
CS Staging Scheme: Rectosigmoid, Rectum	323
Surgery Codes	
Rectosigmoid ⁴	329
Rectum ⁴	331
Anus	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	333
CS Staging Scheme: Anus	335
Surgery Codes: Anus ⁴	339
Liver, Intrahepatic Bile Ducts	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	341
CS Staging Scheme: Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts	343
Surgery Codes: Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts ⁴	349
Gallbladder, Extrahepatic Bile Ducts, Ampulla of Vater	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	351
CS Staging Schemas	
Gallbladder	353
Extrahepatic Bile Duct(s).....	357
Ampulla of Vater	361
Other Biliary and Biliary, NOS	365
Surgery Codes: All Other Sites ⁴	369

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

Table of Contents, continued

Pancreas	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	371
CS Staging Schemas	
Pancreas Head.....	373
Pancreas Body and Tail	379
Pancreas Other and Unspecified	385
Surgery Codes: Pancreas ⁴	389
Other Digestive	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	391
CS Staging Scheme: Other and Ill-Defined Digestive Organs	393
Surgery Codes: All Other Sites ⁴	397
Nasal Cavity, Middle Ear	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Head and Neck pg C-5 ¹	399
CS Staging Schemas	
Nasal Cavity.....	401
Middle Ear	409
Surgery Codes: All Other Sites ⁴	417
Sinuses	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Head and Neck pg C-5 ¹	419
CS Staging Schemas	
Maxillary Sinus.....	421
Ethmoid Sinus.....	429
Accessory (Paranasal) Sinus	437
Surgery Codes: All Other Sites ⁴	445
Larynx	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Head and Neck pg C-5 ¹	447
CS Staging Schemas	
Glottic Larynx.....	449
Supraglottic Larynx	459
Subglottic Larynx	469
Larynx, Overlapping Lesion or Not Otherwise Specified	477
Surgery Codes: Larynx ⁴	485
Trachea	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	487
CS Staging Scheme: Trachea.....	489
Surgery Codes: All Other Sites ⁴	493
Lung	
Coding Guidelines	495
Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: Lung ¹	
Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations	497
Flowchart	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	505
Histology Coding Rules.....	511
Matrix	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	517
Histology Coding Rules.....	521
Text	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	527
Histology Coding Rules.....	529
CS Staging Scheme: Lung	533
Surgery Codes: Lung ⁴	541

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

Table of Contents, continued

Heart, Mediastinum, Pleura	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	543
CS Staging Schemas	
Heart, Mediastinum	545
Pleura	549
Other and Ill-Defined Respiratory Sites and Intrathoracic Organs.....	555
Surgery Codes: All Other Sites ⁴	559
Bones, Joints, Cartilage	
Coding Guidelines	561
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	563
CS Staging Scheme: Bone	565
Surgery Codes: Bones, Joints, and Articular Cartilage; Peripheral Nerves and Autonomic Nervous System; Connective, Subcutaneous, and Other Soft Tissues ⁴	569
Skin	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	571
CS Staging Schemas	
Skin ³	573
Skin of Eyelid	579
Surgery Codes: Skin ⁴	583
Melanoma	
Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: Cutaneous Melanoma	
Equivalent Terms, Definitions and Illustrations	587
Flowchart	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	593
Histology Coding Rules.....	597
Matrix	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	601
Histology Coding Rules.....	603
Text	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	605
Histology Coding Rules.....	607
CS Staging Scheme: Malignant Melanoma of Skin, Vulva, Penis, Scrotum (8720-8790)	609
Surgery Codes	
Skin ⁴	619
All Other Sites ⁴	621
Mycosis Fungoides, Sezary Disease	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	623
CS Staging Scheme: Mycosis Fungoides and Sezary disease of Skin, vulva, Penis, Scrotum (9700-9701).....	625
Surgery Codes	
Skin ⁴	629
All Other Sites ⁴	631
Nerves, Nervous System, Soft Tissues	
Coding Guidelines: Bones, Joints, Cartilage	633
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	635
CS Staging Scheme: Peripheral Nerves and Autonomic Nervous System; Connective, Subcutaneous, and Other Soft Tissues	637
Surgery Codes: Bones, Joints, and Articular Cartilage; Peripheral Nerves and Autonomic Nervous System; Connective, Subcutaneous, and Other Soft Tissues ⁴	643

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

Table of Contents, continued

Retroperitoneum, Peritoneum	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	645
CS Staging Scheme: Retroperitoneum and Peritonuem	647
Surgery Codes: All Other Sites ⁴	651
Breast	
Coding Guidelines: Breast	653
Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: Breast ¹	
Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Tables and Illustrations.....	657
Flowchart	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	665
Histology Coding Rules.....	669
Matrix	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	681
Histology Coding Rules.....	683
Text	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	691
Histology Coding Rules.....	693
CS Staging Scheme: Breast	699
Surgery Codes: Breast ⁴	709
Vulva, Vagina	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	711
CS Staging Schemes	
Vulva.....	715
Vagina.....	719
Surgery Codes: All Other Sites ⁴	723
Cervix Uteri	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	725
CS Staging Scheme: Cervix Uteri.....	727
Surgery Codes: Cervix Uteri ⁴	733
Corpus Uteri, Uterus, NOS	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	735
CS Staging Scheme: Corpus Uteri; Uterus, NOS	737
Surgery Codes: Corpus Uteri ⁴	743
Ovary	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	745
CS Staging Scheme: Ovary ⁴	747
Surgery Codes: Ovary ⁴	753
Fallopian Tube, Ligaments, Adnexa	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	755
CS Staging Schemas	
Fallopian Tube	757
Broad and Round Ligaments, Parametrium, Uterine Adnexa	763
Surgery Codes: All Other Sites ⁴	767
Other and Unspecified Female Genital Organs, Placenta	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	769
CS Staging Schemas	
Other and Unspecified Female Genital Organs	771
Placenta	775
Surgery Codes: All Other Sites ⁴	781

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

Table of Contents, continued

Penis	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	783
CS Staging Scheme: Penis ³	785
Surgery Codes: All Other Sites ⁴	789
Prostate	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	791
CS Staging Scheme: Prostate (excludes transitional cell carcinoma of the prostatic ducts and prostatic urethra. See Urethra pg C-925	793
Surgery Codes: Prostate ⁴	805
Testis	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	807
CS Staging Scheme: Testis	809
Surgery Codes: Testis ⁴	815
Other and Unspecified male Genital Organs	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	817
CS Staging Schemas	
Other and Unspecified Male Genital Organs (excludes Kaposi sarcoma and lymphoma).....	819
Scrotum ³	823
Surgery Codes: All Other Sites ⁴	827
Kidney	
Coding Guidelines: Kidney, Renal Pelvis, and Ureter.....	829
Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: Kidney ¹	
Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Tables and Illustrations.....	831
Flowchart	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	837
Histology Coding Rules.....	843
Matrix	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	849
Histology Coding Rules.....	853
Text	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	857
Histology Coding Rules.....	859
CS Staging Scheme: Kidney (Renal Parenchyma)	863
Surgery Codes: Kidney, Renal Pelvis, and Ureter ⁴	867
Renal Pelvis, Ureter	
Coding Guidelines: Kidney, Renal Pelvis, and Ureter.....	869
Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: Renal Pelvis, Ureter, Bladder and Other Urinary ¹	
Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Tables and Illustrations.....	871
Flowchart	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	879
Histology Coding Rules.....	883
Matrix	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	889
Histology Coding Rules.....	893
Text	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	897
Histology Coding Rules.....	899
CS Staging Scheme: Renal Pelvis, and Ureter.....	903
Surgery Codes: Kidney, Renal Pelvis, and Ureter ⁴	907

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

Table of Contents, continued

Bladder	
Coding Guidelines: Bladder.....	909
MP/H Coding Rules: see Renal Pelvis, Ureter, Bladder and Other Urinary pg C-871 ¹	913
CS Staging Scheme: Bladder	915
Surgery Codes: Bladder ⁴	921
Urethra, Other Urinary	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Renal Pelvis, Ureter, Bladder and Other Urinary pg C-871 ¹	923
CS Staging Schemas	
Urethra	925
Paraurethral Gland, Overlapping lesion of Urinary Organs and Unspecified Urinary Organs	929
Surgery Codes: All Other Sites ⁴	933
Eye	
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	935
CS Staging Schemas	
Conjunctiva (excludes retinoblastoma, malignant melanoma, Kaposi sarcoma and lymphoma)	937
Malignant Melanoma of Conjunctiva (8720-8790)	941
Cornea, Retina, Choroid, Ciliary body (Iris, Lens, Sclera, Ureal Tract), Eyeball, Overlapping and Other Eye (excludes melanoma and retinoblastoma)	945
Malignant Melanoma of Iris and Ciliary Body (8720-8790).....	949
Malignant Melanoma of Choroid (8720-8790).....	955
Malignant Melanoma of Other Eye (8720-8790)	959
Lacrimal Gland	963
Orbit.....	967
Retinoblastoma (9510-9514)	971
Surgery Codes: All Other Sites ⁴	977
Brain, Central Nervous System, Malignant	
Coding Guidelines: Brain	979
Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: Brain, Spinal Cord, Cranial Nerves, Pituitary gland, Craniopharyngeal duct and Pineal gland ¹	
Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts and Illustrations.....	981
Flowchart	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	989
Histology Coding Rules.....	993
Matrix	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	997
Histology Coding Rules.....	1001
Text	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	1003
Histology Coding Rules.....	1005
CS Staging Schemas	
Brain and Cerebral Meninges	1007
Other Parts of Central Nervous System	1011
Surgery Codes: Brain ⁴	1015

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

Table of Contents, continued

Brain, Central Nervous System, Benign and Borderline	
Coding Guidelines: Brain	1017
Multiple Primary Rules: Benign and Borderline Primary Intracranial and CNS Tumors.....	1017
CS Staging Schemas	
See Brain and Cerebral Meninges pg C-1007.....	1020
See Other Parts of Central Nervous System pg C-1011	1020
Surgery Codes: Brain ⁴	1021
Thyroid	
Coding Guidelines: Thyroid Gland.....	1023
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	1025
CS Staging Scheme: Thyroid Gland.....	1027
Surgery Codes: Thyroid Gland ⁴	1033
Thymus, Adrenal and Other Endocrine Glands	
MP/H Coding Rules:	
For Malignant Pituitary, Craniopharyngeal duct and Pineal Gland (C751-C753) See Malignant Meninges, Brain, Spinal Cord, Cranial Nerves, Pituitary gland, Craniopharyngeal duct and Pineal gland pg C-981	1035
For Benign, Borderline Pituitary, Craniopharyngeal duct and Pineal gland Multiple Primary Rules: See Benign and Borderline Primary Intracranial and CNS Tumors pg C-1017	1035
For Thymus, Adrenal gland, Carotid body, Aortic body and other paraganglia, Overlapping lesion of endocrine glands and related structures and Endocrine gland NOS (C379, C740-C741, C749, C754-C759) See Other Sites pg C-1079.....	1035
CS Staging Scheme: Thymus, Adrenal (Suprarenal) Gland, and Other Endocrine Glands	1037
Surgery Codes: All Other Sites ⁴	1043
Kaposi Sarcoma	
Coding Guidelines: Kaposi Sarcoma of All Sites.....	1045
MP/H Coding Rules: see Other Sites pg C-1079 ²	1047
CS Staging Scheme: Kaposi Sarcoma of All Sites (9140).....	1049
Surgery Codes: See site-specific codes.....	1053
Lymphoma	
Coding Guidelines: Lymph Nodes.....	1055
Multiple Primary Rules: Hematopoietic Primaries	1057
CS Staging Scheme: Hodgkin and Non-Hodgkin Lymphomas of All Sites (9590-9729).....	1059
Surgery Codes	
Lymph Nodes.....	1065
See site-specific codes	1067

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

Table of Contents, continued

Hematopoietic, Reticuloendothelial, Immunoproliferative and Myeloproliferative	
Multiple Primary Rules: Hematopoietic Primaries.....	1069
CS Staging Scheme: Hematopoietic, Reticuloendothelial, Immunoproliferative, and Myeloproliferative Neoplasms (9731-9734, 9740-9742, 9750-9758, 9760-9762, 9764-9769, 9800-9801, 9805, 9820, 9823, 9826-9827, 9831-9837, 9840, 9860-9861, 9863, 9866-9867, 9870-9876, 9891, 9895-9897, 9910, 9920, 9930-9931, 9940, 9945-9946, 9948, 9950, 9960-9964, 9970, 9975, 9980, 9982-9987, 9989).....	1071
Surgery Codes: Hematopoietic/Reticuloendothelial/Immunoproliferative/Myeloproliferative Disease	1075
Other and Unknown Sites	
Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: Other Sites ²	
Equivalent Terms, Definitions and Tables.....	1077
Flowchart	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	1085
Histology Coding Rules.....	1093
Matrix	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	1111
Histology Coding Rules.....	1115
Text	
Multiple Primary Rules.....	1127
Histology Coding Rules.....	1131
CS Staging Scheme: Other and Ill-Defined Sites, Unknown Primary Site.....	1139
C42 excludes hematopoietic, reticuloendothelial, immunoproliferative and myeloproliferative neoplasms, Hodgkin and non-Hodgkin lymphomas, and Kaposi sarcoma	
C77 excludes hematopoietic, reticuloendothelial, immunoproliferative and myeloproliferative neoplasms, Hodgkin and non-Hodgkin lymphomas, and Kaposi sarcoma	
Surgery Codes	
See Hematopoietic, Reticuloendothelial, Immunoproliferative, and Myeloproliferative Disease pg C-1075	1143
Spleen ⁴	1144
Unknown and Ill-Defined Primary Sites ⁴	1145
CS Staging Schemes	
Standard Tables	1149

Footnotes

1. Excludes lymphoma and leukemia (9590 – 9989) and Kaposi sarcoma (9140)
2. Excludes lymphoma and leukemia (9590 – 9989)
3. Excludes malignant melanoma, Kaposi sarcoma, mycosis fungoides, Sezary disease and other lymphomas.
4. Excludes 9750, 9760 – 9764, 9800 – 9820, 9826, 9831 – 9920, 9931 – 9964, 9980 – 9989. For these histologies, see Surgery Codes Hematopoietic, Reticuloendothelial, Immunoproliferative and Myeloproliferative Disease pg C- 1075.

This page left blank

Appendix C

Site-Specific Coding Modules

The site-specific coding modules are stand-alone coding manuals that include SEER Coding Guidelines; Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Tables, Charts and Illustrations; Multiple Primary Rules; Histology Coding Rules; Collaborative Staging Coding Instructions and Surgery of Primary Site codes. In the past, site-specific instructions were scattered throughout the SEER Program Code Manual. Staging rules and codes were in a separate manual from all other coding rules and codes. As part of the SEER commitment to continuing Quality Improvement, this appendix brings together the site-specific instructions needed to abstract a case, facilitating efficiency and accuracy. General instructions in the main manual are applicable in the absence of site-specific instructions. All modules include the collaborative staging and surgery codes, and multiple primary and histology coding rules. In addition, some modules include site-specific coding guidelines. The goal is to have stand-alone modules for major anatomic sites. SEER will continue to work toward this goal by enhancing site-specific guidelines as modules are expanded and revised.

Part II of the Collaborative Staging manual is included in this appendix. For an introduction to Collaborative Staging, see Part I of the Collaborative Staging Manual and Coding Instructions.

The surgery codes are based on the American College of Surgeons Commission on Cancer's *Facility Oncology Registry Data System*, American College of Surgeons, Chicago, IL, 2004 (FORDS), Appendix B: Site-specific Surgery Codes (Revised 2004). The surgery codes in this document are identical to the FORDS manual; only formatting and annotations may vary. The **SEER Notes** that appear in the Surgery Code sections contain information or instructions not found in FORDS or that are different from FORDS.

This page left blank

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

**Oral Cavity
C000-C069**

This page left blank

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

Guidelines for Head and Neck

The head and neck rules cover the following sites: Lip C000-C009, Oral Cavity C019-C069, Salivary Gland C079-C089, Tonsil C090-C099, Oropharynx C100-C109, Nasopharynx C110-C119, Pyriform Sinus C129, Hypopharynx C130-C139, Other and Ill-defined Sites in Lip, Oral cavity and Pharynx C140-C148, Nasal Cavity C300, Middle Ear C301, Accessory Sinuses C310-C319, and Larynx C320-C329.

Head and neck tumors frequently extend into adjacent anatomic sites, or overlap multiple contiguous sites. The workup for these tumors often includes physical examinations, imaging, scans, endoscopies, biopsies and surgical observations. Each of these diagnostic tools provides a unique view of the tumor. More than one anatomic location may be involved with tumor and reports may contain conflicting information regarding the primary site.

Coding the Primary Site

Code the site where the tumor **originated**; do not simply code the biopsy site.

When there are multiple biopsies and the primary site is not documented, or when there is discrepant information, code the primary site using the following priority order.

Priority Order

1. Tumor board
 - a. Specialty
 - b. General
2. Staging physician's site assignment
 - a. AJCC staging form
 - b. TNM statement in medical record

If neither 1 nor 2 are available, the priority order for using information depends upon whether the patient had a surgical resection of the primary tumor.

3. Total (complete) resection of primary tumor
Note: The primary tumor is completely removed. The surgical margins may be microscopically positive.
 - a. Surgeon's statement from operative report
 - b. Final diagnosis from pathology report

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations

C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

4. No resection (biopsy only):
 - Documentation from:
 - a. Endoscopy (physical exam with scope)
 - b. Radiation oncologist
 - c. Diagnosing physician
 - d. Primary care physician
 - e. Other physician
 - f. Radiologist impression from diagnostic imaging
 - g. Physician statement based on physical exam (clinical impression)

When the point of origin **cannot be determined**, use a topography code for overlapping sites:

- C02.8 Overlapping lesion of tongue
- C08.8 Overlapping lesion of major salivary glands
- C14.8 Overlapping lesion of lip, oral cavity, and pharynx.

Equivalent or Equal Terms

- In situ, noninvasive, intraepithelial
- Squamous cell carcinoma, squamous cell epithelioma, epidermoid carcinoma
- Tumor, mass, lesion, neoplasm
- Contiguous, continuous

Definitions

In Situ: A tumor that is confined to the epithelium without penetration of the basement membrane

Invasive: A tumor that penetrates the basement membrane and involves at least the lamina propria

Most invasive: The tumor with the greatest continuous extension (see focal and foci definitions in the general instructions). The least to the greatest extension for mouth and oral cavity:

- epithelium
- lamina propria, submucosa (not found in gum and hard palate)
- muscularis propria (not found in gum and hard palate)

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations
C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

Table 1 –Paired Sites

Table Instructions: Use this table to determine multiple primary status for sites listed in Column 1.

Column 1: Paired Sites	Column 2: Code
Parotid Glands	C079
Major Salivary Glands	C080; C081
Tonsils	C090; C091; C098, C099
Nasal Cavity	C300
Accessory Sinuses	C310; C312
Middle Ear	C301

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations
 C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

Table 2 – Changes to Previous SEER Site Grouping Table

Previous to 2007, tumors in sites on the same row were abstracted as a single primary.

Code	Site Groupings
C01	Base of tongue
C02	Other and unspecified parts of tongue
C05	Palate
C06	Other and unspecified parts of mouth
C07	Parotid gland
C08	Other and unspecified major salivary glands
C09	Tonsil
C10	Oropharynx
C12	Pyramidal sinus
C13	Hypopharynx
C30	Nasal cavity and middle ear
C31	Accessory sinuses

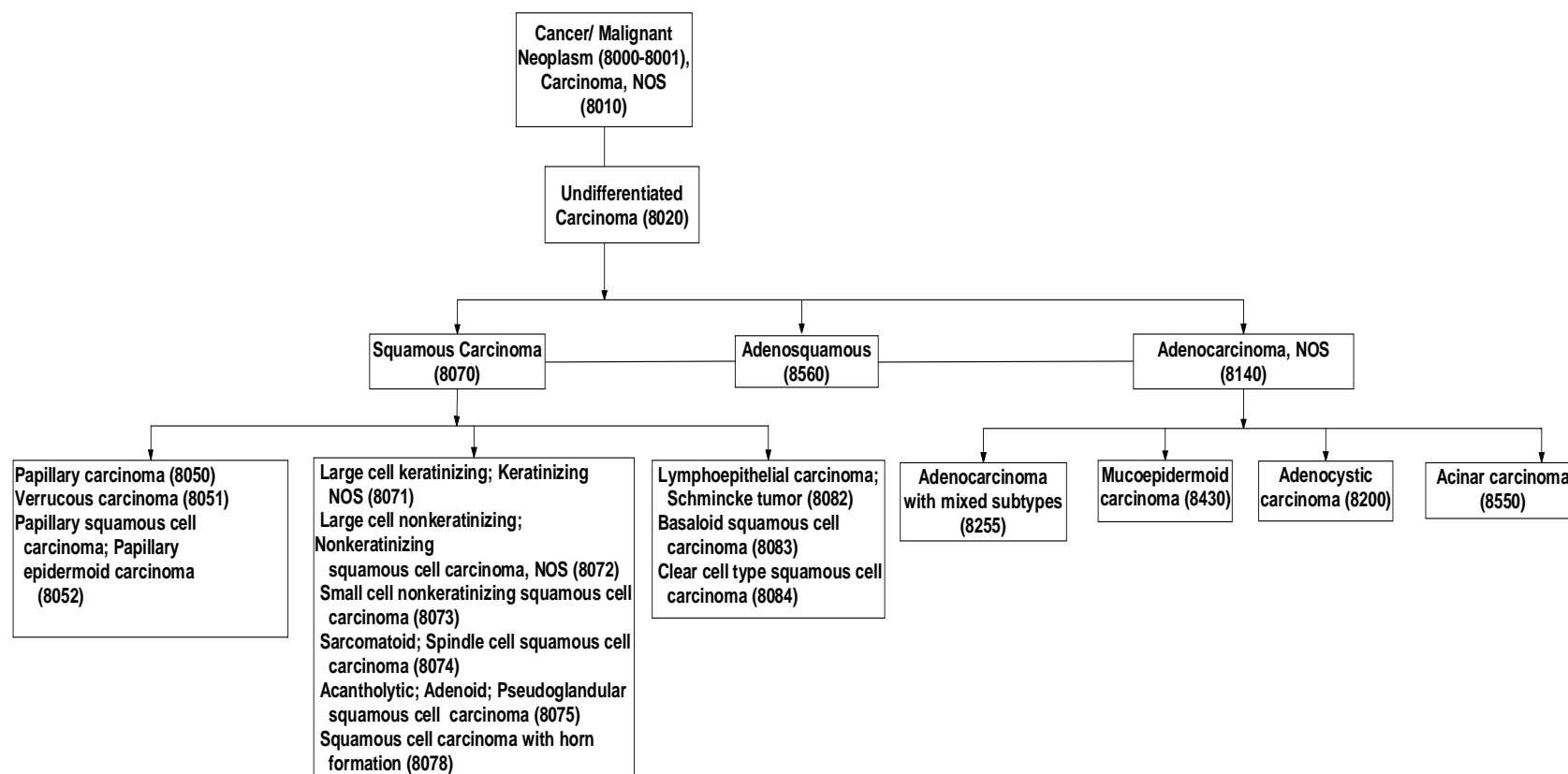
Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

Chart 1 – Head and Neck Histology Groups and Specific types

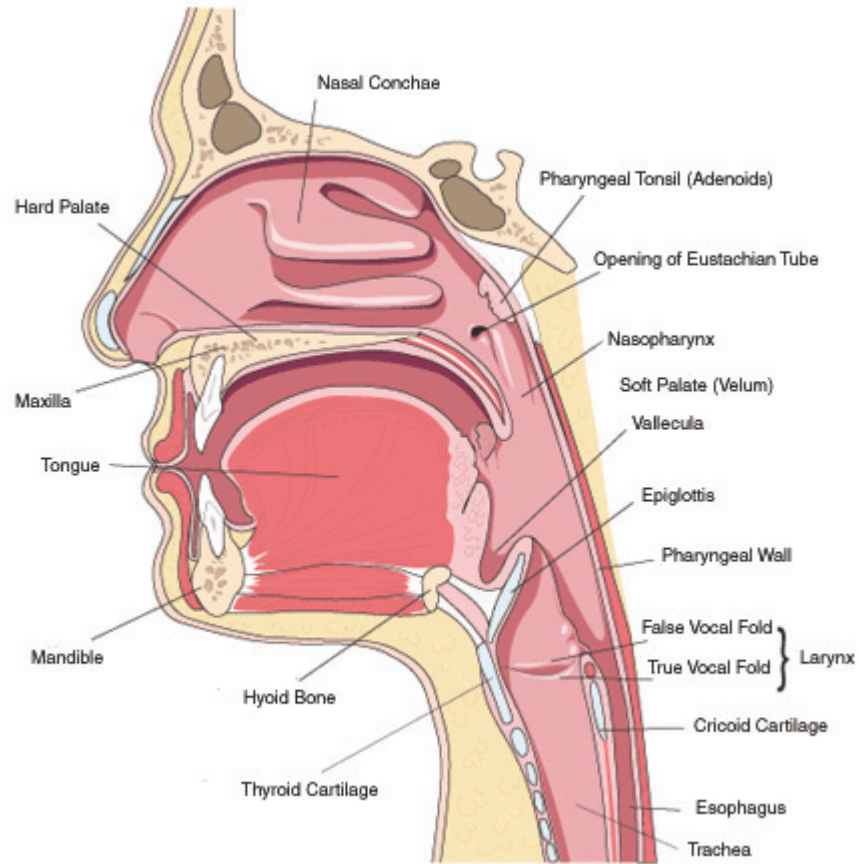
Note: Greater than 85% of cancers in the Head and Neck are squamous cell carcinoma

Chart Instructions: Use this chart with the histology rules to code the most specific histologic term. The tree is arranged in descending order. Each branch is a histology group, starting with the NOS or group terms and descending into the specific types for that group. As you follow the branch down, the terms become more specific.



Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

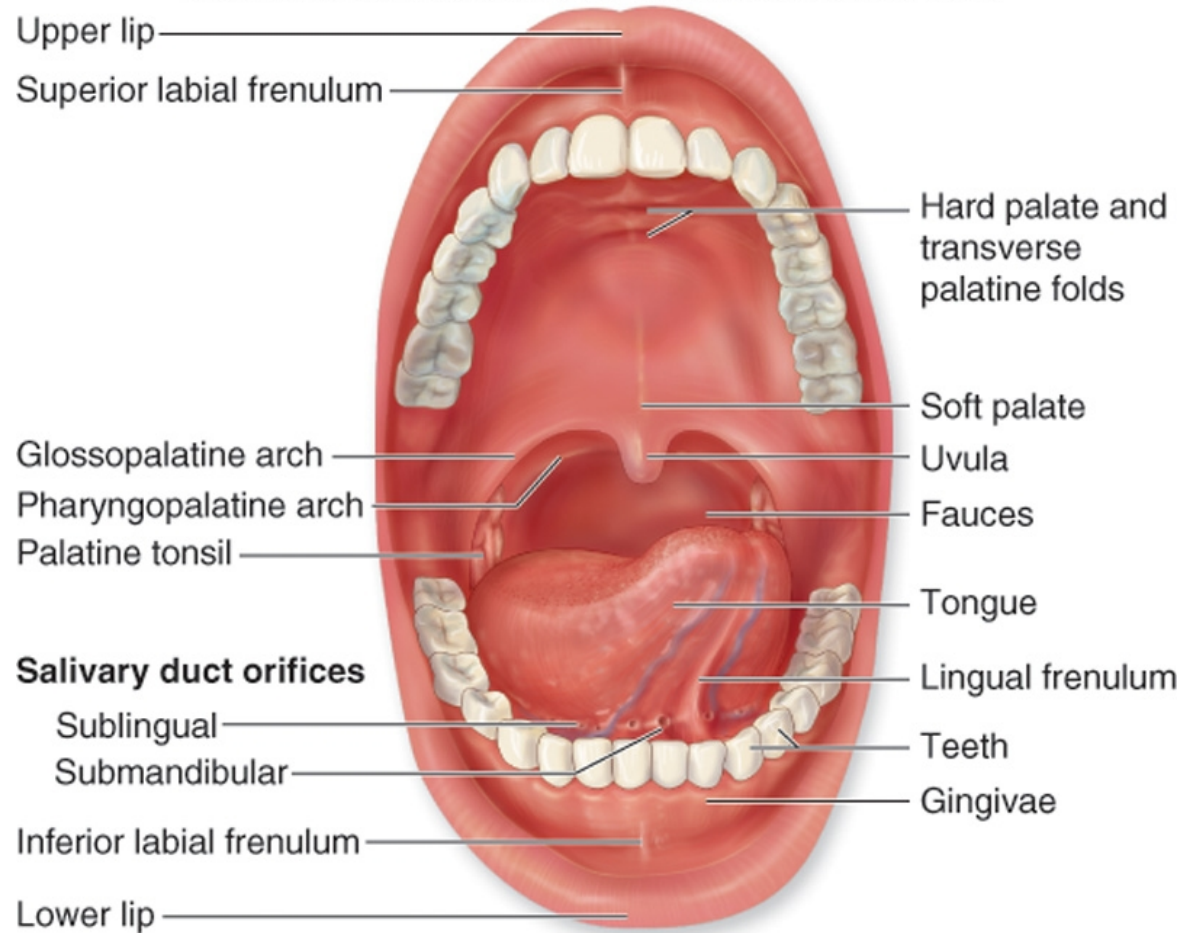
Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations
 C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)



Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations
 C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

Copyright © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. Permission required for reproduction or display.

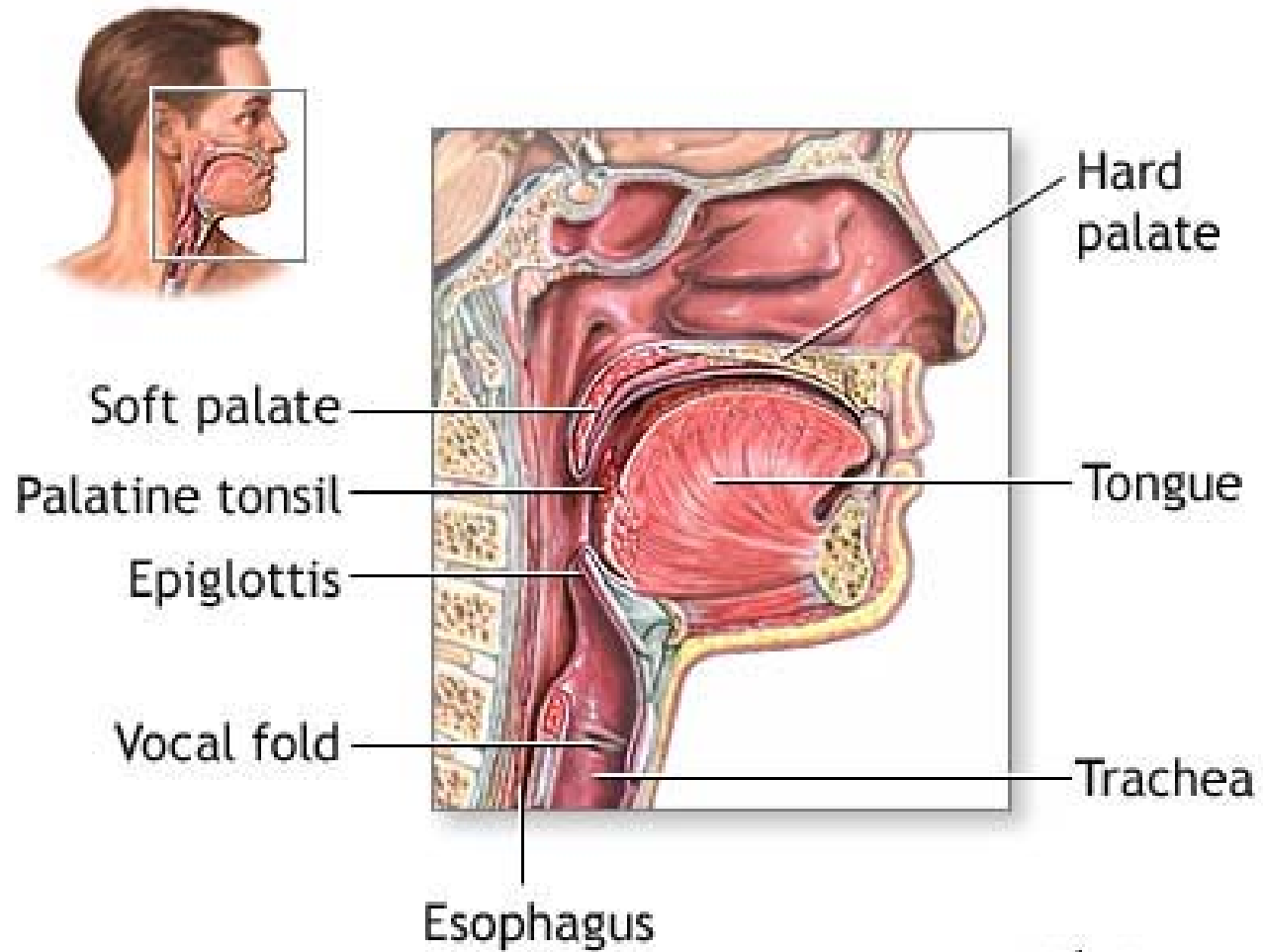


(a)

Image used with licensed permission.

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

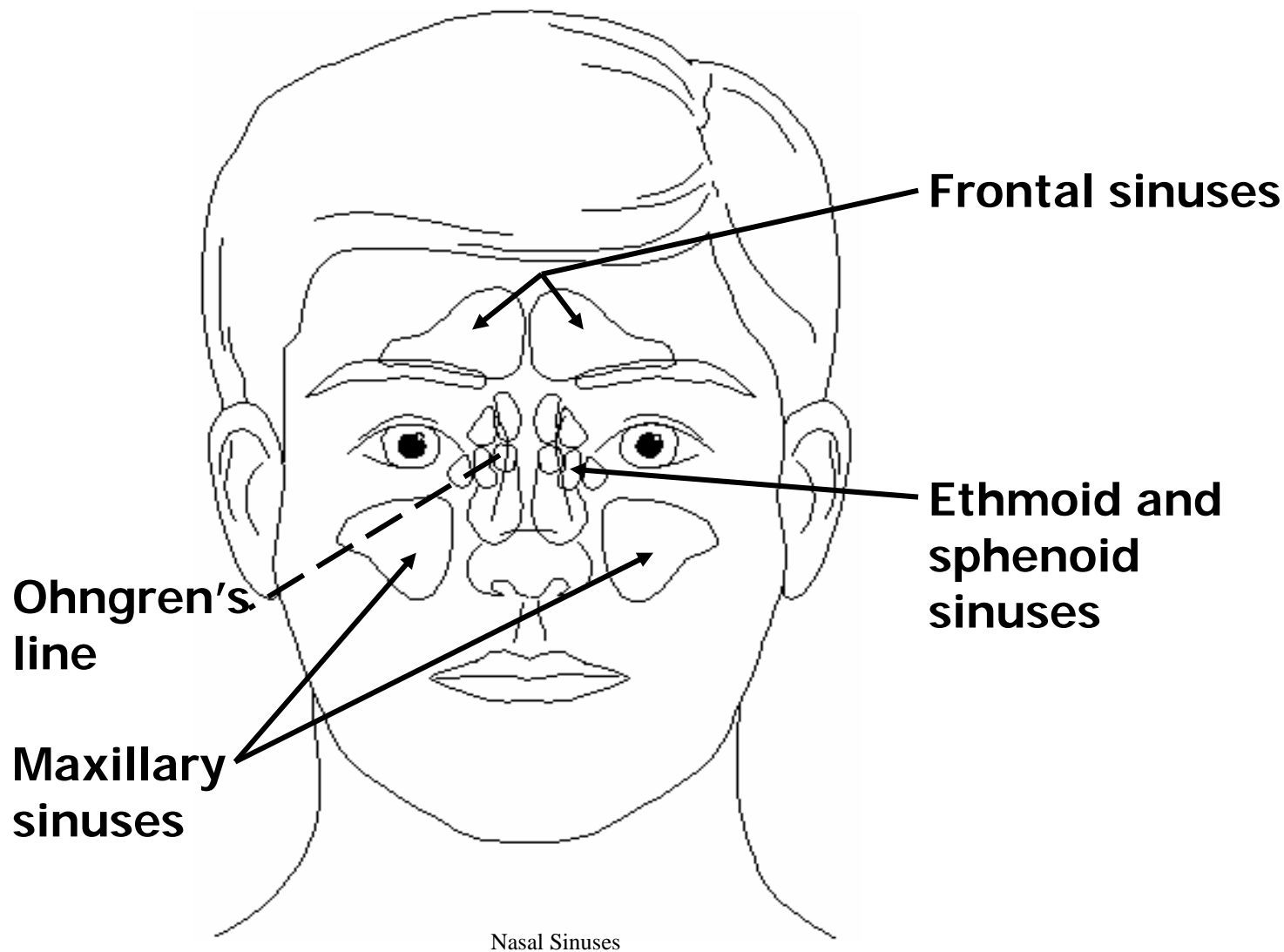
**Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations
C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**



A.D.A.M illustration used with licensed permission. All rights reserved

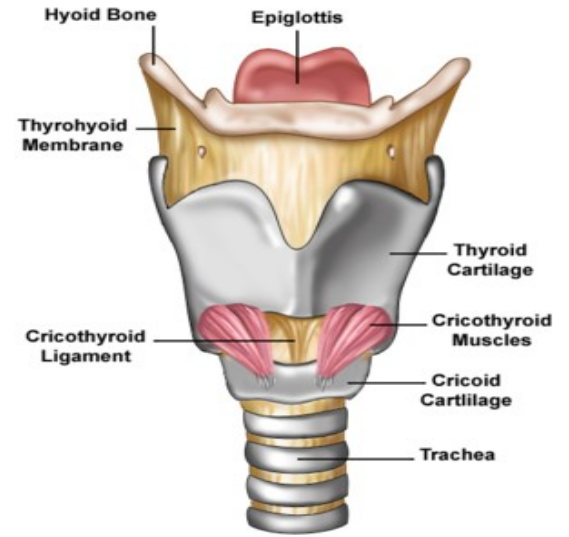
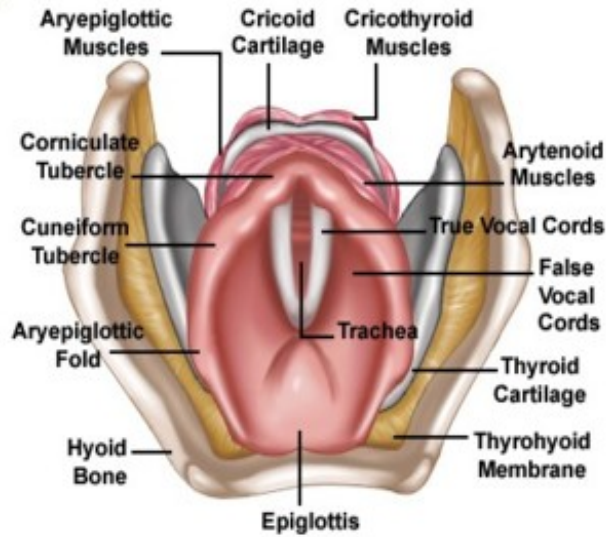
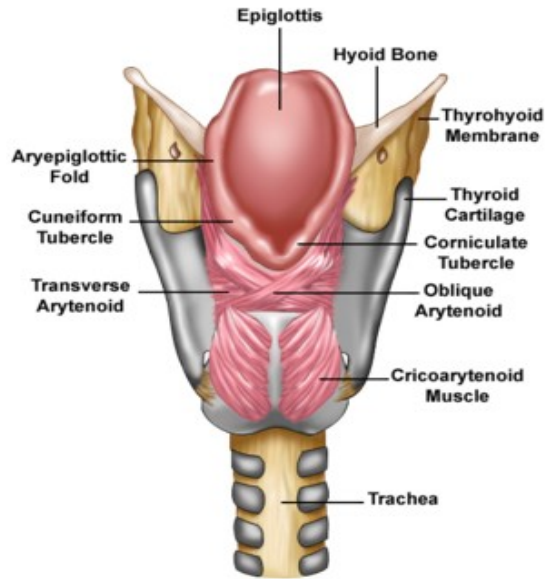
Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations
C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)



Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations
C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)



Larynx

Illustrations used with permission of Blue Tree Publishing

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

**Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations
C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)**

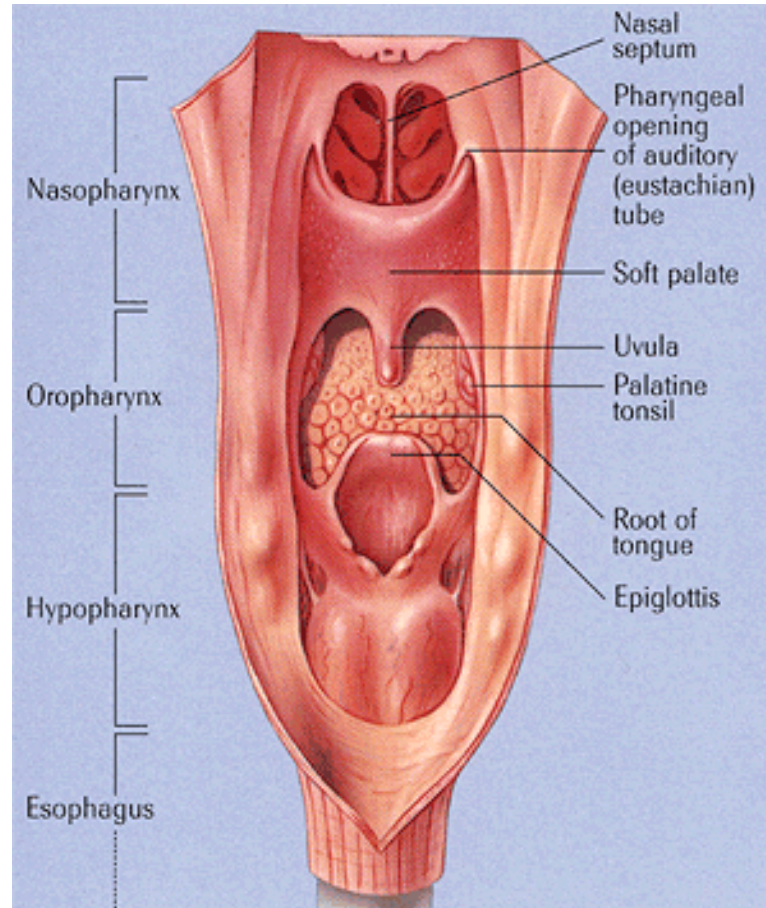


Image made available by a generous grant from Bristol-Myers Squibb

This page left blank

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Multiple Primary Rules - Flowchart

Head and Neck Multiple Primary Rules-Flowchart

(C000-C148, C300-C329)

(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)



* Prepare one abstract. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code.

** Prepare two or more abstracts. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code to each case abstracted.

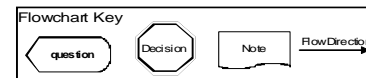
UNKNOWN IF SINGLE OR MULTIPLE TUMORS	DECISION	NOTES
<p>M1</p> <pre> graph TD Q1{{Is it impossible to determine if there is a single tumor or multiple tumors?}} Q1 -- YES --> D1{{SINGLE Primary*}} Q1 -- NO --> N1[Go to Single Tumor or Multiple Tumors] </pre>	<p style="text-align: center;">SINGLE Primary*</p> <p>End of instructions for Unknown if Single or Multiple Tumors</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Tumor(s) not described as metastasis.</p> <hr/> <p>Use this rule only after all information sources have been exhausted.</p> <p><i>Example 1:</i> History and physical exam states large tumor in nasopharynx. Biopsy base of tongue shows squamous cell carcinoma. No further information available. Abstract as a single primary.</p> <p><i>Example 2:</i> Pathology report states extensive squamous cell carcinoma involving nasopharynx and larynx. Fragments of epiglottis positive for squamous cell carcinoma. No other information available. Abstract as a single primary.</p>
SINGLE TUMOR	DECISION	NOTES
<p>M2</p> <pre> graph TD Q2{{Is there a single tumor?}} Q2 -- YES --> D2{{SINGLE Primary*}} Q2 -- NO --> N2[Go to Multiple Tumors.] </pre>	<p style="text-align: center;">SINGLE Primary*</p> <p>End of instructions for Single Tumor.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">1. Tumor not described as metastasis.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">2. Includes combinations of in situ and invasive</p> <hr/> <p style="text-align: center;">The tumor may overlap onto or extend into adjacent/contiguous site or subsite.</p>

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

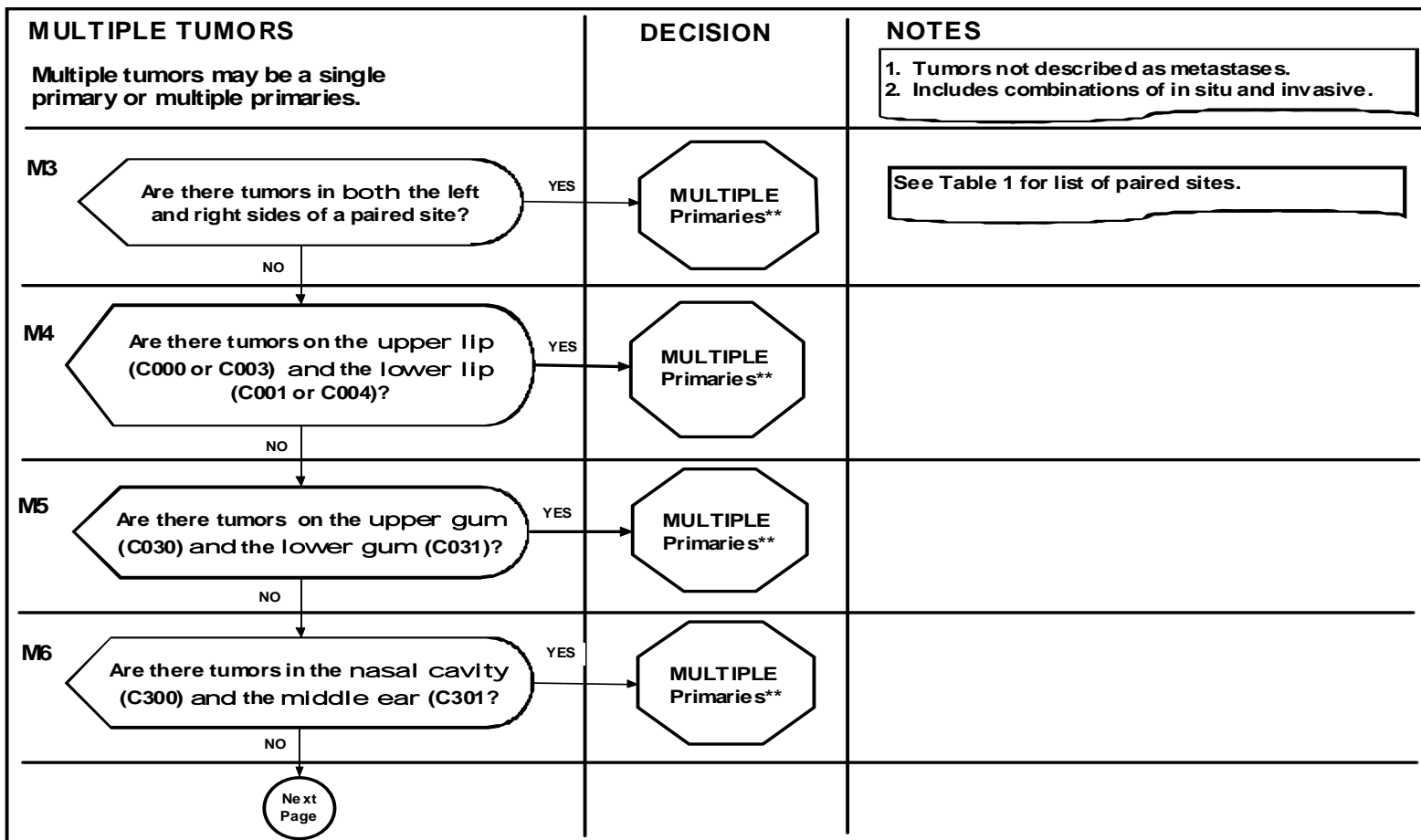
Multiple Primary Rules - Flowchart

Head and Neck Multiple Primary Rules-Flowchart

(C000-C148, C300-C329)
 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)



- * Prepare one abstract. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code.
- ** Prepare two or more abstracts. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code to each case abstracted.



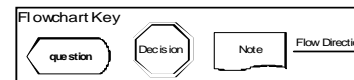
Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Multiple Primary Rules - Flowchart

Head and Neck Multiple Primary Rules-Flow chart

(C000-C148, C300-C329)

(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)



* Prepare one abstract. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code.

** Prepare two or more abstracts. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code to each case abstracted.

MULTIPLE TUMORS, continued	DECISION	NOTES
<p>M7</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 15px; padding: 10px; margin: 5px;"> <p style="text-align: center;">Are there tumors in sites with ICD-O-3 topography codes that are different at the second (Cxx) and/or third character (Cxx)?</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;">NO</p>	<p>YES →</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; width: 60px; height: 60px; margin: 0 auto; display: flex; align-items: center; justify-content: center;"> <p>MULTIPLE Primaries**</p> </div>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px;"> <p>1. Tumors not described as metastases. 2. Includes combinations of in situ and invasive.</p> </div>
<p>M8</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 15px; padding: 10px; margin: 5px;"> <p style="text-align: center;">Is there an Invasive tumor following an In situ tumor more than 60 days after diagnosis?</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;">NO</p>	<p>YES →</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; width: 60px; height: 60px; margin: 0 auto; display: flex; align-items: center; justify-content: center;"> <p>MULTIPLE Primaries**</p> </div>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px;"> <p>1. The purpose of this rule is to ensure that the case is counted as an incident (invasive) case when incidence data are analyzed. 2. Abstract as multiple primaries even if the medical record/physician states it is recurrence or progression of disease.</p> </div>
<p>M9</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 15px; padding: 10px; margin: 5px;"> <p style="text-align: center;">Are there tumors diagnosed more than five (5) years apart?</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;">NO</p>	<p>YES →</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; width: 60px; height: 60px; margin: 0 auto; display: flex; align-items: center; justify-content: center;"> <p>MULTIPLE Primaries**</p> </div>	
<p>Next Page</p>		

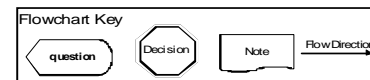
Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Multiple Primary Rules - Flowchart

Head and Neck Multiple Primary Rules-Flowchart

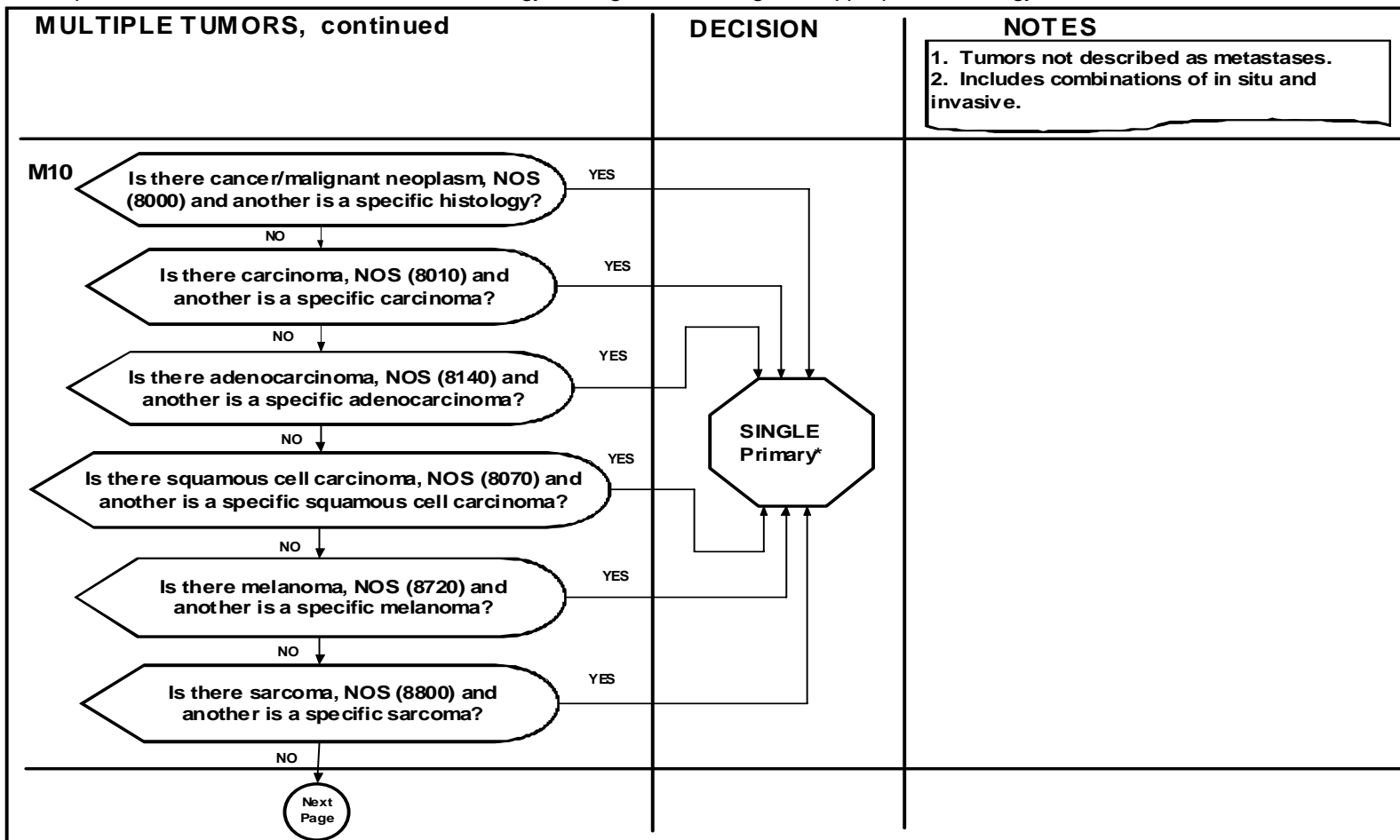
(C000-C148, C300-C329)

(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)



* Prepare one abstract. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code.

** Prepare two or more abstracts. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code to each case abstracted.



Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Multiple Primary Rules - Flowchart

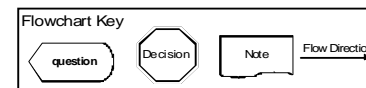
Head and Neck Multiple Primary Rules

(C000-C148, C300-C329)

(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

* Prepare one abstract. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code.

** Prepare two or more abstracts. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code to each case abstracted.



MULTIPLE TUMORS, continued	DECISION	NOTES
<p>M11</p> <p>Do the tumors have ICD-O-3 histology codes that are different at the first (xxxx), second (xxxx) or third (xxxx) number?</p>	<p>YES → MULTIPLE Primary**</p>	<p>Tumors not described as metastases.</p>
<p>M12</p> <p>Does not meet any of the above criteria (M1 through M11).</p>	<p>YES → SINGLE Primary*</p> <p>End of instructions for Multiple Tumors.</p>	<p>1. When an invasive tumor follows an in situ tumor within 60 days, abstract as a single primary.</p> <p>2. All cases covered by Rule M12 have the same first 3 numbers in ICD-O-3 histology code.</p>
<p>ERROR: Recheck rules. Stop when a match is found.</p>		
<p>Rule M12 Examples: The following are examples of cases that use Rule M12. This is NOT intended to be an exhaustive set of examples; there are other cases that may be classified as a single primary. Warning: Using only these case examples to determine the number of primaries can result in major errors.</p>		
<p>Example 1. Multifocal tumors in floor of mouth</p>	<p>Example 2. An in situ and invasive tumor diagnosed within 60 days</p>	<p>Example 3. In situ following an invasive tumor or more than 60 days apart</p>

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

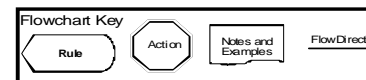
Histology Coding Rules - Flowchart

Head and Neck Histology Coding Rules-Flowchart

(C000-C148, C300-C329)

(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

SINGLE TUMOR



Rule	Action	Notes and Examples
<p>H1</p> <p>Is there no pathology/cytology specimen or is the pathology/cytology report unavailable?</p> <p>NO</p>	<p>Code the histology documented by the physician.</p>	<p>1. Priority for using documents to code the histology</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> o Documentation in the medical record that refers to pathologic or cytologic findings o Physician's reference to type of cancer (histology) in the medical record o CT, PET or MRI scans <p>2. Code the specific histology when documented.</p> <p>3. Code the histology to 8000 (cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS) or 8010 (carcinoma, NOS) as stated by the physician when nothing more specific is documented.</p>
<p>H2</p> <p>Is the specimen from a metastatic site? (there is no pathology/cytology specimen from the primary site)</p> <p>NO</p>	<p>Code the histology from a metastatic site.</p>	<p>Code the behavior /3.</p>
<p>H3</p> <p>Is only one histologic type identified?</p> <p>NO</p>	<p>Code the histology.</p>	<p><i>Example:</i> Squamous cell carcinoma. Code 8070.</p> <p>Do not code terms that do not appear in the histology description.</p> <p><i>Example:</i> Do not code 8072 (squamous cell carcinoma non-keratinizing) unless the words "non-keratinizing" actually appear in the diagnosis.</p>
<p>H4</p> <p>Does the tumor have invasive and in situ components?</p> <p>NO</p>	<p>Code the invasive histology.</p>	<p><i>Example:</i> The final diagnosis is keratinizing squamous cell carcinoma (8073) with areas of squamous cell carcinoma in situ (8070). Code the invasive histologic type, keratinizing squamous cell carcinoma (8073).</p>
<p>Next Page</p>		

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

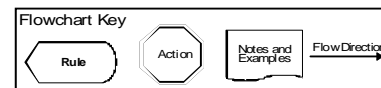
Histology Coding Rules - Flowchart

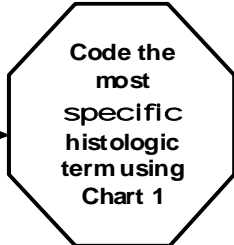
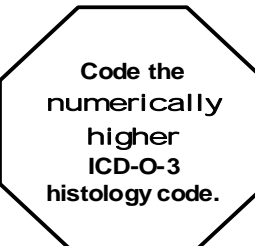
Head and Neck Histology Coding Rules-Flowchart

(C000-C148, C300-C329)

(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

SINGLE TUMOR



Rule	Action	Notes and Examples
<p>H5</p> <p>Are there multiple histologies within the same branch such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS (8000) and a more specific histology? OR ● carcinoma, NOS (8010) and a more specific carcinoma? OR ● squamous cell carcinoma, NOS (8070) and a more specific squamous cell carcinoma? OR ● adenocarcinoma, NOS (8140) and a more specific adenocarcinoma? OR ● melanoma, NOS (8720) and a more specific melanoma? OR ● sarcoma, NOS (8800) and a more specific sarcoma? <p>NO</p>	<p>Yes</p> 	<p>1. The specific histology for In situ tumors may be identified as pattern, architecture, type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with _____ differentiation.</p> <p>2. The specific histology for Invasive tumors may be identified as type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with _____ differentiation.</p> <p><i>Example:</i> The final diagnosis is squamous cell carcinoma (8070), papillary (8050). Code the specific type, papillary (8050)</p>
<p>H6</p>		

This is the end of instructions for Single Tumor.
Code the histology according to the rule that fits the case.

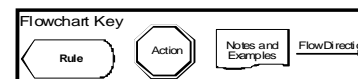
Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Histology Coding Rules - Flowchart

Head and Neck Histology Coding Rules-Flow chart

(C000-C148, C300-C329)

(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)



MULTIPLE TUMORS ABSTRACTED AS A SINGLE PRIMARY

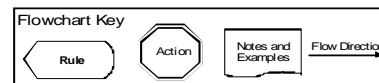
Rule	Action	Notes and Examples
<p>H7</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p style="text-align: right;">YES</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Is there no pathology/cytology specimen or is the pathology/cytology report unavailable?</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;">NO</p>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p style="text-align: center;">Code the histology documented by the physician.</p> </div>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Priority for using documents to code the histology <ul style="list-style-type: none"> o Documentation in the medical record that refers to pathologic or cytologic findings o Physician's reference to type of cancer (histology) in the medical record o CT, PET or MRI scans 2. Code the specific histology when documented. 3. Code the histology to 8000 (cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS) or 8010 (carcinoma, NOS) as stated by the physician when nothing more specific is documented.
<p>H8</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p style="text-align: right;">YES</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Is the specimen from a metastatic site (there is no pathology/cytology specimen from the primary site)?</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;">NO</p>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p style="text-align: center;">Code the histology from a metastatic site.</p> </div>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p style="text-align: center;">Code the behavior /3.</p> </div>
<p>H9</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p style="text-align: right;">YES</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Is only one histologic type identified?</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;">NO</p>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p style="text-align: center;">Code the histology.</p> </div>	<p><i>Example:</i> Squamous cell carcinoma. Code 8070.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p style="text-align: center;">Do not code terms that do not appear in the histology description.</p> <p><i>Example:</i> Do not code 8072 (squamous cell carcinoma non-keratinizing) unless the words "non-keratinizing" actually appear in the diagnosis.</p> </div>
<div style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 5px; width: 40px; margin: 0 auto;"> <p style="text-align: center;">Next Page</p> </div>		

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Histology Coding Rules - Flowchart

Head and Neck Histology Coding Rules-Flowchart

(C000-C148, C300-C329)
 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)



MULTIPLE TUMORS ABSTRACTED AS A SINGLE PRIMARY

Rule	Action	Notes and Examples
<p>H10</p>	<p>Code the histology of the most invasive tumor.</p>	<p>1. See the Head and Neck Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations for the definition of most invasive.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> o One tumor is in situ and one is invasive, code the histology from the invasive tumor. o Both/all histologies are invasive, code the histology of the most invasive tumor. <p>2. If tumors are equally invasive, go to the next rule.</p>

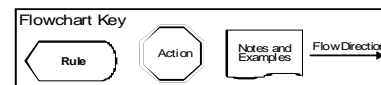
Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Histology Coding Rules - Flowchart

Head and Neck Histology Coding Rules-Flowchart

(C000-C148, C300-C329)

(Excludes lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)



MULTIPLE TUMORS ABSTRACTED AS A SINGLE PRIMARY

Rule	Action	Notes and Examples
<p>H11</p> <p>Are there multiple histologies within the same branch such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS (8000) and a more specific histology? OR ● carcinoma, NOS (8010) and a more specific carcinoma? OR ● squamous cell carcinoma, NOS (8070) and a more specific squamous cell carcinoma? OR ● adenocarcinoma, NOS (8140) and a more specific adenocarcinoma? OR ● melanoma, NOS (8720) and a more specific melanoma? OR ● sarcoma, NOS (8800) and a more specific sarcoma? <p style="text-align: right;">Yes</p>	<p>Code the most specific histologic term using Chart 1</p>	<p>1. The specific histology for in situ tumors may be identified as pattern, architecture, type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with ____ differentiation.</p> <p>2. The specific histology for invasive tumors may be identified as type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with ____ differentiation.</p> <p><i>Example:</i> The final diagnosis is squamous cell carcinoma (8070), papillary (8050). Code the specific type, papillary (8050)</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">NO</p> <p>H12</p>	<p>Code the numerically higher ICD-O-3 histology code.</p>	

This is the end of instructions for Multiple Tumors Abstracted as a Single Primary.
Code the histology according to the rule that fits the case.

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Multiple Primary Rules – Matrix C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

- * Prepare one abstract. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code.
 ** Prepare two or more abstracts. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code to each case abstracted.

Rule	Site	Histology	Timing	Behavior	Notes/Examples	Primary
UNKNOWN IF SINGLE OR MULTIPLE TUMORS					Tumor(s) not described as metastasis	
M1					Use this rule only after all information sources have been exhausted. <i>Example 1:</i> History and physical exam states large tumor in nasopharynx. Biopsy base of tongue shows squamous cell carcinoma. No further information available. Abstract as a single primary. <i>Example 2:</i> Pathology report states extensive squamous cell carcinoma involving nasopharynx and larynx. Fragments of epiglottis positive for squamous cell carcinoma. No other information available. Abstract as a single primary.	Single*
SINGLE TUMOR					1. Tumor not described as metastasis 2. Includes combinations of in situ and invasive	
M2	Single				The tumor may overlap onto or extend into adjacent/contiguous site or subsite.	Single*
MULTIPLE TUMORS Multiple tumors may be a single primary or multiple primaries					1. Tumors not described as metastases 2. Includes combinations of in situ and invasive	
M3	Right side and left side of a paired site				See Table 1 for list of paired sites	Multiple**
M4	Upper lip (C000 or C003) and lower lip (C001 or C004)					Multiple**

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Multiple Primary Rules – Matrix C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

Rule	Site	Histology	Timing	Behavior	Notes/Examples	Primary
M5	Upper gum (C030) and lower gum (C031)					Multiple**
M6	Nasal cavity (C300) and middle ear (C301)					Multiple**
M7	Topography codes that are different at the second (Cxxx) and/or third (Cxxx) character					Multiple**
M8			More than 60 days after diagnosis	An invasive following an in situ	<p>1: The purpose of this rule is to ensure that the case is counted as an incident (invasive) case when incidence data are analyzed.</p> <p>2: Abstract as multiple primaries even if the medical record/physician states it is recurrence or progression of disease.</p>	Multiple**
M9			Diagnosed more than five (5) years apart			Multiple**

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Multiple Primary Rules – Matrix C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

Rule	Site	Histology	Timing	Behavior	Notes/Examples	Primary
M10		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS (8000) and another is a specific histology; or • Carcinoma, NOS (8010) and another is a specific carcinoma; or • Adenocarcinoma, NOS (8140) and another is a specific adenocarcinoma; or • Squamous cell carcinoma, NOS (8070) and another is specific squamous cell carcinoma or • Melanoma and another is a specific melanoma; or • Sarcoma, NOS (8800) and another is a specific sarcoma 				Single*
M11		Different at the first (<u>x</u> xxx), second (x <u>x</u> xx), or third (xx <u>x</u> x) number				Multiple**

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Multiple Primary Rules – Matrix C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

Rule	Site	Histology	Timing	Behavior	Notes/Examples	Primary
M12	Does not meet any of the above criteria				<p>1. When an invasive tumor follows an in situ tumor within 60 days, abstract as a single primary.</p> <p>2. All cases covered by rule M12 have the same first 3 numbers in ICD-O-3 histologic code.</p> <p>Rule M12 Examples: The following are examples of cases that use Rule M12. This is NOT intended to be an exhaustive set of examples; there are other cases that may be classified as a single primary. Warning: Using only these case examples to determine the number of primaries can result in major errors</p> <p>Example 1: Multifocal tumors in floor of mouth</p> <p>Example 2: An in situ and invasive tumor diagnosed within 60 days</p> <p>Example 3: In situ following an invasive tumor more than 60 days apart</p>	Single*

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Histology Coding Rules – Matrix
C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

Rule	Pathology/Cytology Specimen	Histology	Behavior	Notes and Examples	Code
SINGLE TUMOR					
H1	No pathology/cytology specimen or the pathology/cytology report is not available			<p>1: Priority for using documents to code the histology</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Documentation in the medical record that refers to pathologic or cytologic findings • Physician's reference to type of cancer (histology) in the medical record • CT, PET or MRI scans <p>2: Code the specific histology when documented.</p> <p>3: Code the histology to 8000 (cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS) or 8010 (carcinoma, NOS) as stated by the physician when nothing more specific is documented</p>	The histology documented by the physician
H2	None from primary site			Code the behavior /3	The histology from metastatic site
H3		One type		<p>Example: Squamous cell carcinoma. Code 8070.</p> <p>Do not code terms that do not appear in the histology description.</p> <p>Example: Do not code 8072 (squamous cell carcinoma non-keratinizing) unless the words "non-keratinizing" actually appear in the diagnosis</p>	The histology
H4			Invasive and in situ	<p>Example: The final diagnosis is keratinizing squamous cell carcinoma (8073) with areas of squamous cell carcinoma in situ (8070). Code the invasive histologic type, keratinizing squamous cell carcinoma (8073).</p>	The invasive histologic type

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Histology Coding Rules – Matrix C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

Rule	Pathology/Cytology Specimen	Histology	Behavior	Notes and Examples	Code
H5		<p>Multiple histologies all within the same branch on Chart 1.</p> <p>Examples of histologies within same branch:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS (8000) and a more specific histology or • Carcinoma, NOS (8010) and a more specific carcinoma or • Squamous cell carcinoma, NOS (8070) and a more specific squamous cell carcinoma or • Adenocarcinoma, NOS (8140) and a more specific adenocarcinoma or • Melanoma, NOS (8720) and a more specific melanoma or • Sarcoma, NOS (8800) and a more specific sarcoma 		<p>1. The specific histology for in situ tumors may be identified as pattern, architecture, type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with ____differentiation.</p> <p>2. The specific histology for invasive tumors may be identified as type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with ____differentiation.</p> <p>Example: The final diagnosis is squamous cell carcinoma (8070), papillary (8050). Code the specific type, papillary (8050).</p>	The most specific term using Chart 1

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Histology Coding Rules – Matrix
C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

Rule	Pathology/Cytology Specimen	Histology	Behavior	Notes and Examples	Code
MULTIPLE TUMORS ABSTRACTED AS A SINGLE PRIMARY					
H7	No pathology/cytology specimen or the pathology/cytology report is not available			<p>1: Priority for using documents to code the histology</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Documentation in the medical record that refers to pathologic or cytologic findings • Physician’s reference to type of cancer (histology) in the medical record • CT, PET or MRI scans <p>2: Code the specific histology when documented</p> <p>3: Code the histology to 8000 (cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS) or 8010 (carcinoma, NOS) as stated by the physician when nothing more specific is documented</p>	The histology documented by the physician
H8	None from primary site			Code the behavior /3	The histology from a metastatic site
H9		One type		<p>Example: Squamous cell carcinoma. Code 8070.</p> <p>Do not code terms that do not appear in the histology description.</p> <p>Example: Do not code 8072 (squamous cell carcinoma non-keratinizing) unless the words “non-keratinizing” actually appear in the diagnosis</p>	The histology
H10				<p>1: See the Head and Neck Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations for the definition of most invasive.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • One tumor is in situ and one is invasive, code the histology from the invasive tumor • Both/all histologies are invasive, code the histology of the more invasive tumor. <p>2. If tumors are equally invasive, go to the next rule</p>	The histology of the most invasive tumor

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Histology Coding Rules – Matrix C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

Rule	Pathology/Cytology Specimen	Histology	Behavior	Notes and Examples	Code
H11		<p>Multiple histologies all within the same branch on Chart 1.</p> <p>Examples of histologies within same branch:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS (8000) and a more specific histology or • Carcinoma, NOS (8010) and a more specific carcinoma or • Squamous cell carcinoma, NOS (8070) and a more specific squamous cell carcinoma or • Adenocarcinoma, NOS (8140) and a more specific adenocarcinoma or • Melanoma, NOS (8720) and a more specific melanoma or Sarcoma, NOS (8800) and a more specific sarcoma 		<p>1. The specific histology for in situ tumors may be identified as pattern, architecture, type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with ____differentiation.</p> <p>2. The specific histology for invasive tumors may be identified as type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with ____differentiation.</p> <p>Example: The final diagnosis is squamous cell carcinoma (8070), papillary (8050). Code the specific type, papillary (8050).</p>	The most specific term using Chart 1
H12	None of the conditions are met				The histology with the numerically higher ICD-O-3 code

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Multiple Primary Rules - Text

C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

UNKNOWN IF SINGLE OR MULTIPLE TUMORS

Note: Tumor(s) not described as metastasis

Rule M1 When it is not possible to determine if there is a **single tumor or multiple tumors**, opt for a single tumor and abstract as a single primary.*

Note: Use this rule only after all information sources have been exhausted.

Example 1: History and physical exam states large tumor in nasopharynx. Biopsy base of tongue shows squamous cell carcinoma. No further information available. Abstract as a single primary.

Example 2: Pathology report states extensive squamous cell carcinoma involving nasopharynx and larynx. Fragments of epiglottis positive for squamous cell carcinoma. No other information available. Abstract as a single primary.

*** Prepare one abstract. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code.**

This is the end of instructions for Unknown if Single or Multiple Tumors.

SINGLE TUMOR

Note 1: Tumor not described as metastasis

Note 2: Includes combinations of in situ and invasive

Rule M2 A **single tumor** is always a single primary. *

Note: The tumor may overlap onto or extend into adjacent/contiguous site or subsite.

This is the end of instructions for Single Tumor.

*** Prepare one abstract. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code.**

MULTIPLE TUMORS

Multiple tumors may be a single primary or multiple primaries.

Note 1: Tumors not described as metastases

Note 2: Includes combinations of in situ and invasive

Rule M3 Tumors on the **right side and the left side** of a **paired site** are multiple primaries. **

Note: See Table 1 for list of paired sites.

Rule M4 Tumors on the **upper lip** (C000 or C003) **and the lower lip** (C001 or C004) are multiple primaries. **

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Multiple Primary Rules - Text

C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

- Rule M5** Tumors on the **upper gum** (C030) **and** the **lower gum** (C031) are multiple primaries. **
- Rule M6** Tumors in the **nasal cavity** (C300) **and** the **middle ear** (C301) are multiple primaries. **
- Rule M7** Tumors in sites with ICD-O-3 **topography** codes that are **different** at the second (Cxxx) and/or third (Cxxx) character are multiple primaries. **
- Rule M8** An **invasive** tumor **following** an **in situ** tumor more than 60 days after diagnosis is a multiple primary. **
Note 1: The purpose of this rule is to ensure that the case is counted as an incident (invasive) case when incidence data are analyzed.
Note 2: Abstract as multiple primaries even if the medical record/physician states it is recurrence or progression of disease.
- Rule M9** Tumors diagnosed **more than five (5) years** apart are multiple primaries. **
- Rule M10** Abstract as a single primary* when one tumor is:
- **Cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS (8000) and** another is a **specific histology** or
 - **Carcinoma, NOS (8010) and** another is a **specific carcinoma** or
 - **Adenocarcinoma, NOS (8140) and** another is a **specific adenocarcinoma** or
 - **Squamous cell carcinoma, NOS (8070) and** another is **specific squamous cell carcinoma** or
 - **Melanoma, NOS (8720) and** another is a **specific melanoma**
 - **Sarcoma, NOS (8800) and** another is a **specific sarcoma**
- Rule M11** Tumors with ICD-O-3 **histology** codes that are **different** at the first (xxxx), second (xxxx) or third (xxxx) number are multiple primaries. **
- Rule M12** Tumors that **do not meet any** of the above **criteria** are abstracted as a single primary. *
Note 1: When an invasive tumor follows an in situ tumor within 60 days, abstract as a single primary.
Note 2: All cases covered by Rule M12 have the same first 3 numbers in ICD-O-3 histology code.

This is the end of instructions for Multiple Tumors.

*** If a single primary, prepare one abstract. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code.**

**** If multiple primaries, prepare two or more abstracts. Use the histology coding rules to assign the appropriate histology code to each case abstracted.**

Rule M12 Examples: The following are examples of cases that use Rule M12. This is NOT intended to be an exhaustive set of examples; there are other cases that may be classified as a single primary. **Warning: Using only these case examples to determine the number of primaries can result in major errors.**

Example 1: Multifocal tumors in floor of mouth	Example 2: An in situ and invasive tumor diagnosed within 60 days	Example 3: In situ following an invasive tumor more than 60 days apart
---	--	---

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck**Histology Coding Rules - Text****C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)****SINGLE TUMOR**

Rule H1 Code the histology documented by the physician when there is **no pathology/cytology specimen** or the **pathology/cytology** report is **not available**.

Note 1: Priority for using documents to code the histology

- Documentation in the medical record that refers to pathologic or cytologic findings
- Physician's reference to type of cancer (histology) in the medical record
- CT, PET, or MRI scans

Note 2: Code the specific histology when documented.

Note 3: Code the histology to 8000 (cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS) or 8010 (carcinoma, NOS) as stated by the physician when nothing more specific is documented.

Rule H2 Code the histology from a metastatic site when there is **no pathology/cytology specimen from the primary site**.

Note: Code the behavior /3.

Rule H3 Code the histology when only **one histologic type** is identified.

Example: Squamous cell carcinoma. Code 8070.

Note: Do not code terms that do not appear in the histology description.

Example: Do not code 8072 (squamous cell carcinoma non-keratinizing) unless the words “non-keratinizing” actually appear in the diagnosis.

Rule H4 Code the **invasive** histologic type when a single tumor has invasive and in situ components.

Example: The final diagnosis is keratinizing squamous cell carcinoma (8073) with areas of squamous cell carcinoma in situ (8070). Code the invasive histologic type, keratinizing squamous cell carcinoma (8073).

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Histology Coding Rules - Text

C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

Rule H5 Code the most **specific** histologic term using Chart 1 when there are multiple histologies within the same branch. Examples of histologies within the same branch are:

- Cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS (8000) and a more specific histology or
- Carcinoma, NOS (8010) and a more specific carcinoma or
- Squamous cell carcinoma, NOS (8070) and a more specific squamous carcinoma or
- Adenocarcinoma, NOS(8140) and a more specific adenocarcinoma or
- Melanoma, NOS (8720) and a more specific melanoma or
- Sarcoma, NOS (8800) and a more specific sarcoma

Note 1: The specific histology for **in situ** lesions may be identified as pattern, architecture, type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with ___differentiation

Note 2: The specific histology for **invasive** lesions may be identified as type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with ___differentiation

Example: The final diagnosis is squamous cell carcinoma (8070), papillary (8050). Code the specific type, papillary (8050).

Rule H6 Code the histology with the **numerically higher** ICD-O-3 code.

This is the end of instructions for Single Tumor.

Code the histology according to the rule that fits the case.

MULTIPLE TUMORS ABSTRACTED AS A SINGLE PRIMARY

Rule H7 Code the histology documented by the physician when there is **no pathology/cytology specimen** or the **pathology/cytology** report is **not available**.

Note 1: Priority for using documents to code the histology

- Documentation in the medical record that refers to pathologic or cytologic findings
- Physician's reference to type of cancer (histology) in the medical record
- CT, PET, or MRI scans

Note 2: Code the specific histology when documented.

Note 3: Code the histology to 8000 (cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS), or 8010 (carcinoma, NOS) as stated by the physician when no specific histology is documented.

Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules 2007: Head and Neck

Histology Coding Rules - Text

C000-C148, C300-C329 (Excludes lymphoma and leukemia – M9590 – 9989 and Kaposi sarcoma M9140)

- Rule H8** Code the histology from the metastatic site when there is **no pathology/cytology specimen from the primary site**.
Note: Code the behavior /3.
- Rule H9** Code the histology when only **one histologic type** is identified.
Example: Squamous cell carcinoma. Code 8070.
Note: Do not code terms that do not appear in the histology description.
Example: Do not code 8072 (squamous cell carcinoma non-keratinizing) unless the words “non-keratinizing” actually appear in the diagnosis
- Rule H10** Code the histology of the **most invasive** tumor.
Note 1: See the Head and Neck Equivalent Terms, Definitions, Charts, Tables and Illustrations for the definition of most invasive.
- One tumor is in situ and one is invasive, code the histology from the invasive tumor.
 - Both/all histologies are invasive, code the histology of the more invasive tumor.
- Note 2:* If tumors are equally invasive, go to the next rule
- Rule H11** Code the most **specific** histologic term using Chart 1 when there are multiple histologies within the same branch. Examples of histologies within the same branch are:
- Cancer/malignant neoplasm, NOS (8000) and a more specific histology or
 - Carcinoma, NOS (8010) and a more specific carcinoma or
 - Squamous cell carcinoma, NOS (8070) and a more specific squamous carcinoma or
 - Adenocarcinoma, NOS(8140) and a more specific adenocarcinoma or
 - Melanoma, NOS (8720) and a more specific melanoma or
 - Sarcoma, NOS (8800) and a more specific sarcoma
- Note 1:* The specific histology for **in situ** lesions may be identified as pattern, architecture, type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with ___differentiation
- Note 2:* The specific histology for **invasive** lesions may be identified as type, subtype, predominantly, with features of, major, or with ___differentiation
- Example:* The final diagnosis is squamous cell carcinoma (8070), papillary (8050). Code the specific type, papillary (8050).
- Rule H12** Code the histology with the **numerically higher** ICD-O-3 code.

**This is the end of instructions for Multiple Tumors Abstracted as a Single Primary.
Code the histology according to the rule that fits the case.**

This page left blank

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Lip, Upper

Lip (Vermilion or Labial Mucosa)

C00.0, C00.3

C00.0 External upper lip

C00.3 Mucosa of upper lip

Note: AJCC includes labial mucosa (C00.3) with buccal mucosa (C06.0)

<p>CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval</p>	<p>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p>	<p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table</p>
---	---	---

Lip, Upper

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Lip, Upper

CS Extension (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor confined to: Labial mucosa (inner lip) Lamina propria Multiple foci Submucosa (superficial invasion) Vermilion surface Superficial extension to: Skin of lip Subcutaneous soft tissue of lip	*	L	L
20	Musculature	*	L	L
30	Localized, NOS	*	L	L
50	Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Commissure Opposite (both) lip(s)	*	RE	RE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

51	Gingiva	*	RE	RE
70	Maxilla	T4	RE	RE
74	Upper lip/commissure: Nose	T4	RE	D
75	Tongue	T4	D	D
76	Skin of face/neck	T4	D	D
77	Cortical bone (other than code 70) Floor of mouth Inferior alveolar nerve	T4	D	D
80	Further contiguous extension	T4	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

* For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 50, and 51 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Lip, Upper

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Lip, Upper

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Other groups: Facial: Buccinator (buccal) Nasolabial Parotid Infra-auricular Intraparotid Periparotid Preauricular Regional lymph node, NOS	*	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

11	<p>Single positive ipsilateral regional node:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Level I node <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Upper jugular Level III node <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Middle deep cervical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mid jugular Level IV node <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lower jugular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS 	*	D	RN
12	<p>Single positive ipsilateral regional node:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Level V node <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Posterior cervical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Anterior deep cervical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parapharyngeal Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) 	*	D	D
18	Stated as N1, no other information	N1	RN	RN
19	Stated as N2a, no other information	N2a	RN	RN
20	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10	*	RN	RN
21	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11	*	D	RN
22	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12	*	D	D
29	Stated as N2b, no other information	N2b	RN	RN
30	<p>Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:</p> <p>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple</p>	*	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

31	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN
41	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	RN
42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D
49	Stated as N2c, no other information	N2c	RN	RN
50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
51	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
60	Stated as N2, NOS	N2NOS	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, no other information	N3	RN	RN
80	Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Lip, Upper

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Lip, Upper

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Lip, Upper

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Lip, Upper

CS Mets at DX (Revised: 08/14/2006)

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE
10	Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Distant lymph node(s), NOS	M1	D	D
40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
50	(10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases	M1	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U

Lip, Upper

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Lip, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"
992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"
999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Lip, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Lip, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III
100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved
111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

CS Staging Schemas

Lip, Upper**CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Lip, Upper**CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved
010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved
101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Lip, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved
101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Lip, Lower

Lip (Vermilion or Labial Mucosa)

C00.1, C00.4, C00.6

C00.1 External lower lip

C00.4 Mucosa of lower lip

C00.6 Commissure of lip

Note: AJCC includes labial mucosa (C00.4) with buccal mucosa (C06.0)

CS Tumor Size	CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes	The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table
CS Extension	CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
CS TS/Ext-Eval	CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
CS Lymph Nodes	CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
CS Reg Nodes Eval	CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
Reg LN Pos	CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
Reg LN Exam		
CS Mets at DX		
CS Mets Eval		

Lip, Lower

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Lip, Lower

CS Extension (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor confined to: Labial mucosa (inner lip) Lamina propria Multiple foci Submucosa (superficial invasion) Vermilion surface Superficial extension to: Skin of lip Subcutaneous soft tissue of lip	*	L	L
20	Musculature	*	L	L
30	Localized, NOS	*	L	L
50	Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Commissure Opposite (both) lip(s)	*	RE	RE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

51	Gingiva	*	RE	RE
70	Mandible	T4	RE	RE
74	Nose	T4	RE	D
75	Tongue	T4	D	D
76	Skin of face/neck	T4	D	D
77	Cortical bone (other than code 70) Floor of mouth Inferior alveolar nerve	T4	D	D
80	Further contiguous extension	T4	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

* For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 50, and 51 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Lip, Lower

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Lip, Lower

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Other groups Facial: Mandibular Regional lymph node, NOS	*	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

11	<p>Single positive ipsilateral regional node:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Level II node <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Middle deep cervical Mid-jugular Level IV node <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS 	*	D	RN
12	<p>Single positive ipsilateral regional node:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Level V node <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4) 	*	D	D
18	Stated as N1, no other information	N1	RN	RN
19	Stated as N2a, no other information	N2a	RN	RN
20	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10	*	RN	RN
21	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11	*	D	RN
22	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12	*	D	D
29	Stated as N2b, no other information	N2b	RN	RN
30	<p>Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10:</p> <p>Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple</p>	*	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

31	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN
41	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	RN
42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D
49	Stated as N2c, no other information	N2c	RN	RN
50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
51	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
60	Stated as N2, NOS	N2NOS	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, no other information	N3	RN	RN
80	Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Lip, Lower

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Lip, Lower

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Lip, Lower

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Lip, Lower

CS Mets at DX (Revised: 08/14/2006)

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE
10	Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Distant lymph node(s), NOS	M1	D	D
40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
50	(10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases	M1	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U

Lip, Lower

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Lip, Lower

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"
992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record
-----	--

Lip, Lower

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Lip, Lower

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III
100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Lip, Lower

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Lip, Lower

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved
101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Lip, Lower

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved
101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

CS Staging Schemas

Other Lip

Lip (Vermilion or Labial Mucosa)

C00.2, C00.5, C00.8-C00.9

C00.2 External lip, NOS

C00.5 Mucosa of lip, NOS

C00.8 Overlapping lesion of lip

C00.9 Lip, NOS (excludes skin of lip C44.0)

Note: AJCC includes labial mucosa (C00.5) with buccal mucosa (C06.0)

CS Tumor Size	CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes	The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table
CS Extension	CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
CS TS/Ext-Eval	CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
CS Lymph Nodes	CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
CS Reg Nodes Eval	CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
Reg LN Pos	CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
Reg LN Exam		
CS Mets at DX		
CS Mets Eval		

Other Lip

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Lip

CS Extension (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor confined to: Labial mucosa (inner lip) Lamina propria Multiple foci Submucosa (superficial invasion) Vermilion surface Superficial extension to: Skin of lip Subcutaneous soft tissue of lip	*	L	L
20	Musculature	*	L	L
30	Localized, NOS	*	L	L

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

50	Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Commissure Opposite (both) lip(s)	*	RE	RE
51	Gingiva	*	RE	RE
75	Tongue	T4	D	D
76	Skin of face/neck	T4	D	D
77	Cortical bone Floor of mouth Inferior alveolar nerve	T4	D	D
80	Further contiguous extension	T4	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

* For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 50, and 51 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Other Lip

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Lip

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node: Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Other groups: Facial: Buccinator (buccal) Mandibular Nasolabial	*	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

10, cont'd	Parotid: Infra-auricular Intraparotid Periparotid Preauricular Regional lymph node, NOS			
11	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS	*	D	RN
12	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Parapharyngeal Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)	*	D	D
18	Stated as N1, no other information	N1	RN	RN
19	Stated as N2a, no other information	N2a	RN	RN
20	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10	*	RN	RN
21	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11	*	D	RN
22	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12	*	D	D

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

29	Stated as N2b, no other information	N2b	RN	RN
30	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
31	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN
41	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	RN
42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D
49	Stated as N2c, no other information	N2c	RN	RN
50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
51	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
60	Stated as N2, NOS	N2NOS	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, no other information	N3	RN	RN
80	Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Other Lip
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Lip
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Other Lip

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Lip

CS Mets at DX (Revised: 08/14/2006)

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE
10	Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Distant lymph node(s), NOS	M1	D	D
40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
50	(10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases	M1	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U

Other Lip

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Lip

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"
992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"
999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record

Other Lip

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Other Lip

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III
100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved
111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Other Lip

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Other Lip

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved
010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved
101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Other Lip

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital

Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved
101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

C01.9, C02.4

C01.9 Base of tongue, NOS

C02.4 Lingual tonsil

Note: AJCC includes base of tongue (C01.9) with oropharynx (C10._).

CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval	CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table
--	--	--

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Extension (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor on one side confined to posterior 1/3 of tongue: Lamina propria Submucosa	*	L	L
20	Musculature, intrinsic or NOS	*	L	L
30	Localized, NOS Midline tumor	*	L	L
40	Tumor crosses midline	*	L	L
50	Anterior 2/3 of tongue for base of tongue Base of tongue for lingual tonsil Floor of mouth Lower gingiva	*	RE	RE
53	Sublingual gland	*	RE	RE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

60	Epiglottis, lingual (pharyngeal) surface Glossoepiglottic fold Glossopharyngeal fold Lateral pharyngeal wall Pharyngoepiglottic fold Tonsillar pillars and fossae Tonsils Vallecula	*	RE	RE
62	Soft palate, inferior surface or NOS	*	D	RE
71	Mandible for lingual tonsil	T4a	RE	D
72	Mandible for base of tongue	T4a	D	D
74	Medial pterygoid Hard palate	T4a	D	D
75	Musculature, extrinsic: Genioglossus Geniohyoid Hyoglossus Mylohyoid Palatoglossus Styloglossus	T4a	D	D
77	Larynx	T4a	D	D
78	Skin	T4b	D	D
80	Contiguous extension to: Base of skull Carotid artery Hypopharynx Lateral nasopharynx Lateral pterygoid muscle Pterygoid plates Uvula	T4b	D	D
82	Further contiguous extension	T4b	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

* For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 53, 60, and 62 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil
CS TS/Ext-Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Sublingual Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS	*	RN	RN
12	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX)	*	D	D

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

12, cont'd	Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)			
18	Stated as N1, no other information	N1	RN	RN
19	Stated as N2a, no other information	N2a	RN	RN
20	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10	*	RN	RN
22	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12	*	D	D
29	Stated as N2b, no other information	N2b	RN	RN
30	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN
42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D
49	Stated as N2c, no other information	N2c	RN	RN
50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
60	Stated as N2, NOS	N2NOS	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, no other information	N3	RN	RN
80	Lymph nodes, NOS	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Mets at DX (Revised: 08/14/2006)

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE
10	Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Distant lymph node(s), NOS	M1	D	D
40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
50	(10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases	M1	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"
999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved
111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

CS Staging Schemas

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil**CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved
010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved
101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Base of Tongue, Lingual Tonsil**CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved
101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

This page left blank

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

C02.0-C02.3, C02.8-C02.9

C02.0 Dorsal surface of tongue, NOS

C02.1 Border of tongue

C02.2 Ventral surface of tongue, NOS

C02.3 Anterior 2/3 of tongue, NOS

C02.8 Overlapping lesion of tongue

C02.9 Tongue, NOS

<p>CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval</p>	<p>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p>	<p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table</p>
---	--	---

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

CS Extension (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor on one side confined to: Lamina propria Submucosa	*	L	L
20	Musculature, intrinsic or NOS	*	L	L
30	Localized, NOS Midline tumor	*	L	L
40	Tumor crosses midline	*	L	L
50	Base of tongue Floor of mouth Gingiva, lower Retromolar trigone	*	RE	RE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

53	Sublingual gland	*	RE	RE
60	Lateral pharyngeal wall Soft palate, inferior surface Tonsillar pillars and fossae Tonsils	*	D	RE
70	Mandible	T4a	RE	D
72	(60) + (70)	T4a	D	D
74	Maxilla Maxillary sinus	T4a	D	D
75	Musculature, extrinsic: Genioglossus Geniohyoid Hyoglossus Mylohyoid Palatoglossus Styloglossus	T4a	D	D
80	Further contiguous extension	T4b	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

* For codes 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 53, and 60 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS CS TS/Ext-Eval SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node	*	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

10, cont'd	Sublingual Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS			
12	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prealaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)	*	D	D
18	Stated as N1, no other information	N1	RN	RN
19	Stated as N2a, no other information	N2a	RN	RN
20	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10	*	RN	RN
22	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12	*	D	D
29	Stated as N2b, no other information	N2b	RN	RN
30	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN
42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D
49	Stated as N2c, no other information	N2c	RN	RN
50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
60	Stated as N2, NOS	N2NOS	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, no other information	N3	RN	RN
80	Lymph nodes, NOS	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

CS Mets at DX (Revised: 08/15/2006)

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

10	Distant lymph node(s), including: Mediastinal Distant lymph nodes, NOS	M1	D	D
40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
50	(10) + (40)	M1	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"
992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"
999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III
100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved
111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

CS Staging Schemas

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS
CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS
CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved
010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved
101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Anterior 2/3 of Tongue, Tip, Border, and Tongue, NOS

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital

Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved
101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Gum, Upper

C03.0

C03.0 Upper gum

<p>CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval</p>	<p>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p>	<p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table</p>
---	--	---

Gum, Upper

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Upper

CS Extension (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note: Superficial erosion alone of bone/tooth socket by gingival primary is not sufficient to code as bone involvement (code 70).

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor confined to lamina propria (mucoperiosteum) (stroma)	*	L	L
30	Localized, NOS	*	L	L
50	Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Floor of mouth Labial mucosa (inner lip), lip Tongue	*	RE	RE
55	Facial muscle, NOS Subcutaneous soft tissue of face	*	RE	RE
60	Lateral pharyngeal wall (tonsillar pillars and fossae, tonsils)	*	RE	RE
70	Maxilla	T4a	RE	RE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

72	Deep muscle of tongue: Genioglossus Hyoglossus Palatoglossus Styloglossus	T4a	RE	RE
74	Maxillary antrum (sinus) Nasal cavity	T4a	D	D
76	Skin	T4a	D	D
79	Skull	T4b	D	D
80	Further contiguous extension, including: Masticator space Pterygoid plates Skull base Encases internal carotid artery	T4b	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

* For codes 10, 30, 50, 55, 60, and 65 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Gum, Upper

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Upper

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Retropharyngeal, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS	*	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

12	<p>Single positive ipsilateral regional node:</p> <p>Level V node</p> <p>Posterior cervical</p> <p>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)</p> <p>Level VI node</p> <p>Anterior deep cervical</p> <p>Laterotracheal</p> <p>Paralaryngeal</p> <p>Paratracheal</p> <p>Prelaryngeal</p> <p>Pretracheal</p> <p>Recurrent laryngeal</p> <p>Level VII node</p> <p>Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX)</p> <p>Other groups</p> <p>Intraparotid</p> <p>Parapharyngeal</p> <p>Periparotid</p> <p>Retropharyngeal</p> <p>Sub-occipital</p> <p>Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)</p>	*	D	D
18	Stated as N1, no other information	N1	RN	RN
19	Stated as N2a, no other information	N2a	RN	RN
20	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10	*	RN	RN
22	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12	*	D	D
29	Stated as N2b, no other information	N2b	RN	RN
30	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN
42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D
49	Stated as N2c, no other information	N2c	RN	RN
50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

60	Stated as N2, NOS	N2NOS	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, no other information	N3	RN	RN
80	Lymph nodes, NOS	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Gum, Upper
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Upper
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Upper
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Upper
CS Mets at DX (Revised: 08/14/2006)

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE
10	Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Distant lymph node(s), NOS	M1	D	D
40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
50	(10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases	M1	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U

Gum, Upper
CS Mets Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Gum, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"
992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"
999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record

Gum, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Gum, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III
100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved
111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Gum, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Gum, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved
010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved
101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Gum, Upper

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital

Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved
101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

Retromolar gingiva (trigone)

C03.1, C06.2

C03.1 Lower gum

C06.2 Retromolar area

CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval	CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table
--	--	--

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

CS Extension (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note: Superficial erosion alone of bone/tooth socket by gingival primary is not sufficient to code as bone involvement (code 70).

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor confined to lamina propria (mucoperiosteum) (stroma)	*	L	L
30	Localized, NOS	*	L	L
50	Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Floor of mouth Labial mucosa (inner lip), lip Tongue	*	RE	RE
55	Facial muscle, NOS Subcutaneous soft tissue of face	*	RE	RE
60	Lateral pharyngeal wall (tonsillar pillars and fossae, tonsils)	*	RE	RE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

65	Soft palate including uvula	*	RE	RE
70	Mandible	T4a	RE	RE
72	Deep muscle of tongue: Genioglossus Hyoglossus Palatoglossus Styloglossus	T4a	RE	RE
76	Skin	T4a	D	D
79	Skull	T4b	D	D
80	Further contiguous extension, including: Masticator space Pterygoid plates Skull base Encases internal carotid artery	T4b	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

* For codes 10, 30, 50, 55, 60, and 65 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area CS TS/Ext-Eval SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)	*	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

<p>10, cont'd</p>	<p>Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular</p> <p>Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Other groups Facial: Buccinator (buccal) Nasolabial Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS</p>			
<p>12</p>	<p>Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)</p>	<p>*</p>	<p>D</p>	<p>D</p>
<p>18</p>	<p>Stated as N1, no other information</p>	<p>N1</p>	<p>RN</p>	<p>RN</p>
<p>19</p>	<p>Stated as N2a, no other information</p>	<p>N2a</p>	<p>RN</p>	<p>RN</p>
<p>20</p>	<p>Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10</p>	<p>*</p>	<p>RN</p>	<p>RN</p>
<p>22</p>	<p>Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12</p>	<p>*</p>	<p>D</p>	<p>D</p>
<p>29</p>	<p>Stated as N2b, no other information</p>	<p>N2b</p>	<p>RN</p>	<p>RN</p>
<p>30</p>	<p>Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple</p>	<p>*</p>	<p>RN</p>	<p>RN</p>

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN
42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D
49	Stated as N2c, no other information	N2c	RN	RN
50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
60	Stated as N2, NOS	N2NOS	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, no other information	N3	RN	RN
80	Lymph nodes, NOS	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

CS Mets at DX (Revised: 08/14/2006)

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

10	Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Distant lymph node(s), NOS	M1	D	D
40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
50	(10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases	M1	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"
992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"
999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record

CS Staging Schemas

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area**CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area**CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III
100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved
111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

CS Staging Schemas

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area**CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area**CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved
010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved
101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Gum, Lower and Retromolar Area

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital

Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved
101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Gum, NOS

C03.9

C03.9 Gum, NOS

CS Tumor Size	CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes	The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table
CS Extension	CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
CS TS/Ext-Eval	CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
CS Lymph Nodes	CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
CS Reg Nodes Eval	CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
Reg LN Pos	CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
Reg LN Exam		
CS Mets at DX		
CS Mets Eval		

Gum, NOS

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, NOS

CS Extension (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note: Superficial erosion alone of bone/tooth socket by gingival primary is not sufficient to code as bone involvement (code 70).

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor confined to lamina propria (mucoperiosteum) (stroma)	*	L	L
30	Localized, NOS	*	L	L
50	Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Labial mucosa (inner lip), lip	*	RE	RE
55	Facial muscle, NOS Subcutaneous soft tissue of face	*	RE	RE
60	Lateral pharyngeal wall (tonsillar pillars and fossae, tonsils)	*	RE	RE
72	Deep muscle of tongue: Genioglossus Hyoglossus Palatoglossus Styloglossus	T4a	RE	RE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

76	Skin	T4a	D	D
79	Skull	T4b	D	D
80	Further contiguous extension, including: Masticator space Pterygoid plates Skull base Encases internal carotid artery	T4b	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

* For codes 10, 30, 50, 55, 60, and 65 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Gum, NOS

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, NOS

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancer, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular	*	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

10, cont'd	Other groups Facial: Buccinator (buccal) Nasolabial Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS			
12	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)	*	D	D
18	Stated as N1, no other information	N1	RN	RN
19	Stated as N2a, no other information	N2a	RN	RN
20	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10	*	RN	RN
22	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12	*	D	D
29	Stated as N2b, no other information	N2b	RN	RN
30	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN
42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

49	Stated as N2c, no other information	N2c	RN	RN
50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
60	Stated as N2, NOS	N2NOS	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, no other information	N3	RN	RN
80	Lymph nodes, NOS	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10, 20, 30, 40, 49, 50 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Gum, NOS

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, NOS

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, NOS

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, NOS

CS Mets at DX (Revised: 08/14/2006)

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE
10	Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Distant lymph node(s), NOS	M1	D	D
40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

50	(10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases	M1	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U

Gum, NOS

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Gum, NOS

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"
992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"
999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record

Gum, NOS

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

table begins on next page

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/22/2006), *continued*

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Gum, NOS**CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III
100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved
111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Gum, NOS**CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

table begins on next page

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006), *continued*

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Gum, NOS
CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved
010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved
101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

CS Staging Schemas

Gum, NOS

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved
101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Floor of Mouth

C04.0-C04.1, C04.8-C04.9

C04.0 Anterior floor of mouth

C04.1 Lateral floor of mouth

C04.8 Overlapping lesion of floor of mouth

C04.9 Floor of mouth, NOS

CS Tumor Size	CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes	The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table
CS Extension	CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
CS TS/Ext-Eval	CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
CS Lymph Nodes	CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
CS Reg Nodes Eval	CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
Reg LN Pos	CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
Reg LN Exam		
CS Mets at DX		
CS Mets Eval		

Floor of Mouth

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Floor of Mouth

CS Extension (Revised: 08/14/2006)

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor on one side confined to: Lamina propria Submucosa	*	L	L
30	Localized, NOS	*	L	L
40	Tumor crosses midline	*	L	L
50	Anterior 2/3 of tongue Base of tongue Gingiva (alveolar ridge), lower	*	RE	RE
53	Sublingual gland, including ducts Submandibular (submaxillary) glands, including ducts	*	RE	RE
60	Epiglottis Glossoepiglottic fold	*	RE	RE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

60, cont'd	Glossopharyngeal sulcus Lateral pharyngeal wall Pharyngeal (lingual) surface Pharyngoepiglottic fold Tonsillar pillars and fossae Tonsils Vallecula			
62	Extension to deep extrinsic muscle of tongue: Genioglossus Geniohyoid Hyoglossus Mylohyoid Palatoglossus Styloglossus	T4a	L	L
63	(62) + any of (50, 53, or 60)	T4a	RE	RE
64	Subcutaneous soft tissue of chin/neck	T4a	RE	RE
70	Mandible	T4a	RE	RE
76	Skin of undersurface of chin/neck	T4a	RE	RE
77	Further contiguous extension: Maxillary sinus	T4a	D	D
80	Further contiguous extension: Base of skull Masticator space Pterygoid plates	T4b	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

***Note:** For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 53, and 60 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Floor of Mouth

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Floor of Mouth

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006), *continued*

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Sublingual Regional lymph node, NOS	*	RN	RN
12	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)	*	D	D

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

18	Stated as N1, no other information	N1	RN	RN
19	Stated as N2a, no other information	N2a	RN	RN
20	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10	*	RN	RN
22	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12	*	D	D
29	Stated as N2b, no other information	N2b	RN	RN
30	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN
42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D
49	Stated as N2c, no other information	N2c	RN	RN
50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
60	Stated as N2, NOS	N2NOS	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, no other information	N3	RN	RN
80	Lymph nodes, NOS	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10, 20, 30, 40, 49, 50 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

**Floor of Mouth
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Floor of Mouth
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

**Floor of Mouth
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE**

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Floor of Mouth

CS Mets at DX (Revised: 08/14/2006)

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE
10	Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Distant lymph node(s), NOS	M1	D	D
40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
50	(10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases	M1	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U

Floor of Mouth

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Floor of Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"
992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record
-----	--

Floor of Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Floor of Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III
100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Floor of Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Floor of Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved
101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Floor of Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved
101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Hard Palate

C05.0

C05.0 Hard palate

<p>CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval</p>	<p>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p>	<p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table</p>
---	---	---

Hard Palate

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Hard Palate

CS Extension (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor on one side confined to mucoperiosteum (stroma)	*	L	L
30	Localized, NOS	*	L	L
40	Tumor crosses midline	*	L	L
50	Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Gingiva, upper Glossopalatine arch Pharyngopalatine arch Soft palate Uvula	*	RE	RE
70	Maxillary bone Palatine bone	T4a	RE	RE
74	Deep muscle of tongue Floor of nose Maxillary antrum (sinus) Nasal cavity Nasopharynx	T4a	D	D

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

74, cont'd	Skin of face Sphenoid bone			
76	Pterygoid plate	T4b	D	D
80	Further contiguous extension	T4b	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

* For Extension codes 10, 30, 40, and 50 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Hard Palate

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Hard Palate

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Retropharyngeal Regional lymph node, NOS	*	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

11	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submental	*	D	RN
12	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prealaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Parapharyngeal Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)	*	D	D
18	Stated as N1, no other information	N1	RN	RN
19	Stated as N2a, no other information	N2a	RN	RN
20	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10	*	RN	RN
21	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11	*	D	RN
22	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12	*	D	D
29	Stated as N2b, no other information	N2b	RN	RN
30	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
31	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN
41	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	RN
42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

49	Stated as N2c, no other information	N2c	RN	RN
50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
51	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
60	Stated as N2, NOS	N2NOS	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, no other information	N3	RN	RN
80	Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Hard Palate

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Hard Palate

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Hard Palate

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Hard Palate

CS Mets at DX (Revised: 08/14/2006)

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE
10	Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Distant lymph node(s), NOS	M1	D	D

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
50	(10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases	M1	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U

Hard Palate

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Hard Palate

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"
992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"
999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Hard Palate

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Hard Palate

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III
100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved
111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

CS Staging Schemas

Hard Palate**CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Hard Palate**CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved
010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved
101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Hard Palate

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved
101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Soft Palate, Uvula

C05.1-C05.2

C05.1 Soft Palate, NOS

C05.2 Uvula

Note 1: AJCC includes inferior surface of the soft palate (C05.1) and uvula (C05.2) with oropharynx (C09._, C10._).

Note 2: Soft palate excludes nasopharyngeal (superior) surface of soft palate (C11.3).

<p>CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval</p>	<p>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p>	<p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table</p>
---	--	---

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Extension (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor on one side confined to: Lamina propria Submucosa	*	L	L
20	Musculature invaded	*	L	L
30	Localized, NOS	*	L	L
40	Tumor crosses midline	*	L	L
50	Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Gum (gingiva), upper	*	RE	RE
60	Lateral pharyngeal wall Tonsillar pillars and fossae Tonsils	*	RE	RE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

65	Hard palate	T4a	RE	RE
70	Mandible Maxilla Palatine bone (bone of hard palate)	T4a	D	D
71	Pterygoid muscle, medial or NOS	T4a	D	D
72	Tongue Deep extrinsic muscle of tongue	T4a	D	D
73	Larynx	T4a	D	D
74	Maxillary antrum (sinus) Nasopharynx, lateral or NOS	T4b	D	D
77	Nasal cavity	T4a	RE	D
78	Pterygoid muscle, lateral Pterygoid plates Note: For medial pterygoid muscle or pterygoid muscle, NOS, see code 71	T4b	RE	D
79	77 or 78 with any of 70 to 76	T4b	D	D
80	Further contiguous extension Carotid artery Skull base	T4b	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

* For Extension codes 10, 20, 40, 50, and 60 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

table begins on next page

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006), *continued*

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS	*	RN	RN
11	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Other groups Retropharyngeal	*	D	RN
12	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Parapharyngeal Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)	*	D	D
18	Stated as N1, no other information	N1	RN	RN
19	Stated as N2a, no other information	N2a	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

20	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10	*	RN	RN
21	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11	*	D	RN
22	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12	*	D	D
29	Stated as N2b, no other information	N2b	RN	RN
30	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
31	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN
41	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	RN
42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D
49	Stated as N2c, no other information	N2c	RN	RN
50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
51	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
60	Stated as N2, NOS	N2NOS	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, no other information	N3	RN	RN
80	Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Soft Palate, Uvula

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Soft Palate, Uvula

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Mets at DX (Revised: 08/14/2006)

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE
10	Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Distant lymph node(s), NOS	M1	D	D
40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
50	(10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases	M1	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"
999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

table begins on next page

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006), continued

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III
100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved
111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved
010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved
101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Soft Palate, Uvula

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

This page left blank

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Other Mouth

C05.8-C05.9, C06.8-C06.9

C05.8 Overlapping lesion of palate

C05.9 Palate, NOS

C06.8 Overlapping lesion of other and unspecified parts of mouth

C06.9 Mouth, NOS

<p>CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval</p>	<p>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p>	<p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table</p>
---	--	---

Other Mouth

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Mouth

CS Extension (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor confined to: Lamina propria Submucosa	*	L	L
20	Musculature invaded	*	L	L
30	Localized, NOS	*	L	L
50	Adjacent oral cavity	*	RE	RE
60	Extension to oropharynx: Inferior surface of soft palate Lateral pharyngeal wall Lingual surface of epiglottis Vallecula	*	RE	RE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

70	Extension to adjacent structures: Mandible Maxilla Maxillary antrum (sinus) Nasal cavity Skin of face/neck Tongue	T4a	D	D
71	Deep extrinsic muscle of tongue	T4a	D	D
72	Skull	T4b	D	D
75	Base of skull Encases internal carotid artery Masticator space Pterygoid plates	T4b	D	D
80	Further contiguous extension	T4b	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

* For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 50, and 60 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Other Mouth

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Mouth

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular	*	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

10, cont'd	Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS			
12	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)	*	D	D
18	Stated as N1, no other information	N1	RN	RN
19	Stated as N2a, no other information	N2a	RN	RN
20	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10	*	RN	RN
22	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12	*	D	D
29	Stated as N2b, no other information	N2b	RN	RN
30	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D
49	Stated as N2c, no other information	N2c	RN	RN
50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
60	Stated as N2, NOS	N2NOS	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, no other information	N3	RN	RN
80	Lymph nodes, NOS	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Other Mouth

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Mouth

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Mouth

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Mouth

CS Mets at DX (Revised: 08/14/2006)

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE
10	Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Distant lymph node(s), NOS	M1	D	D

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
50	(10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases	M1	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U

Other Mouth

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"
992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"
999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record

Other Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/22/2006), *continued*

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Other Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III
100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved
111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

CS Staging Schemas

Other Mouth**CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Other Mouth**CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved
010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved
101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Other Mouth

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved
101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

C06.0-C06.1

C06.0 Cheek mucosa

C06.1 Vestibule of mouth

<p>CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval</p>	<p>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p>	<p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table</p>
---	---	---

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Extension (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor confined to: Lamina propria Submucosa	*	L	L
20	Musculature (buccinator)	*	RE	L
30	Localized, NOS	*	L	L
50	Lip(s) including commissure	*	RE	RE
51	Gingiva	*	RE	RE
60	Lateral pharyngeal wall Tonsillar pillars and fossae Tonsils	*	RE	RE
65	Subcutaneous soft tissue of cheek	T4a	RE	RE
66	Skin of cheek (WITH or WITHOUT ulceration)	T4a	RE	D

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

67	Maxillary sinus	T4a	D	D
70	Bone (cortical): Mandible Maxilla	T4a	D	D
73	Skull	T4b	D	D
75	Tongue Deep extrinsic muscle of tongue	T4a	D	D
79	Other contiguous extension: Base of skull Encases internal carotid artery Masticator space Pterygoid plates	T4b	D	D
80	Further contiguous extension: Hard palate Soft palate	T4b	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

* For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 50, 51, and 60 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size, as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node	*	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

<p>10, cont'd</p>	<p>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Other groups Facial: Buccinator (buccal) Nasolabial Parotid, NOS Infra-auricular Preauricular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS</p>			
<p>12</p>	<p>Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)</p>	<p>*</p>	<p>D</p>	<p>D</p>
<p>18</p>	<p>Stated as N1, no other information</p>	<p>N1</p>	<p>RN</p>	<p>RN</p>
<p>19</p>	<p>Stated as N2a, no other information</p>	<p>N2a</p>	<p>RN</p>	<p>RN</p>
<p>20</p>	<p>Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10</p>	<p>*</p>	<p>RN</p>	<p>RN</p>
<p>22</p>	<p>Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12</p>	<p>*</p>	<p>D</p>	<p>D</p>

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

29	Stated as N2b, no other information	N2b	RN	RN
30	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple or regional	*	RN	RN
32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN
42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D
49	Stated as N2c, no other information	N2c	RN	RN
50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
60	Stated as N2, NOS	N2NOS	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, no other information	N3	RN	RN
80	Lymph nodes, NOS	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Mets at DX (Revised: 08/14/2006)

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE
10	Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Distant lymph node(s), NOS	M1	D	D
40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
50	(10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases	M1	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"
992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record
-----	--

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III
100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved
101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Cheek (Buccal) Mucosa, Vestibule

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital

Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved
101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

Surgery Codes

Oral Cavity

**Lip C000–C009, Base of Tongue C019, Other Parts of Tongue C020–C029,
Gum C030–C039, Floor of Mouth C040–C049, Palate C050–C059,
Other Parts of Mouth C060–C069
(Except for M9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)**

Codes

- 00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

- 10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
 - 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
 - 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
 - 13 Cryosurgery
 - 14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–14

- 20 Local tumor excision, NOS
 - 26 Polypectomy
 - 27 Excisional biopsy

Any combination of 20 or 26–27 WITH

- 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
 - 22 Electrocautery
 - 23 Cryosurgery
 - 24 Laser ablation
- [**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 24 above combine 20 Local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, or 24 Laser ablation]
- 25 Laser excision

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–27

[**SEER Note:** Codes 20-27 include shave and wedge resection]

- 30 Wide excision, NOS
 - Code 30 includes:
 - Hemiglossectomy
 - Partial glossectomy

- 40 Radical excision of tumor, NOS
 - 41 Radical excision of tumor ONLY
 - 42 Combination of 41 WITH resection in continuity with mandible (marginal, segmental, hemi-, or total resection)
 - 43 Combination of 41 WITH resection in continuity with maxilla (partial, subtotal, or total resection)

[**SEER Note:** In continuity with or “en bloc” means that all of the tissues were removed during the same procedure, but not necessarily in a single specimen]

Codes 40–43 include:

- Total glossectomy
- Radical glossectomy

- 90 Surgery, NOS

- 99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

This page left blank

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

**Parotid, Other and Unspecified Glands
C079, C080-C089**

Note: For Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: see Head and Neck (pg C-5)

This page left blank

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Parotid Gland

C07.9

C07.9 Parotid gland

Note: Laterality must be coded for C07.9.

CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval	CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table
--	--	--

Parotid Gland

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Parotid Gland

CS Extension (Revised: 08/14/2006)

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; non-invasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor confined to gland/duct of origin Multiple foci confined to substance of parotid gland	*	L	L
30	Localized, NOS	*	L	L
35	Microscopic extraparenchymal extension ONLY	*	RE	RE
40	Another major salivary gland (submaxillary, sublingual) Periglandular soft/connective tissue including macroscopic extraparenchymal extension Pharyngeal mucosa Skeletal muscle: Digastric Masseter Pterygoid Sternocleidomastoid Stylohyoid	T3	RE	RE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

42	External auditory meatus Skin overlying gland	T4a	RE	RE
45	Periosteum of mandible	T4a	RE	RE
50	Auricular nerve Mandible Mastoid	T4a	RE	RE
70	Facial (7th) nerve	T4a	RE	D
72	Spinal accessory nerve	T4a	RE	D
75	Major blood vessel(s): Carotid artery Facial artery or vein Jugular vein Maxillary artery	T4b	RE	RE
76	Base of skull Skull, NOS	T4b	RE	D
77	Pterygoid plates	T4b	D	D
80	Further contiguous extension	T4b	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

* For Extension codes 10, 30, and 35 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size as shown in the Extension by Size Table for this site.

Parotid Gland

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Parotid Gland

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

table begins on next page

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/21/2006), *continued*

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Parotid nodes Infra-auricular Intraparotid Periparotid Preauricular Cervical, NOS Deep Cervical, NOS Facial Internal jugular Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS	*	RN	RN
11	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level II node Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Lower deep cervical Lower jugular	*	D	RN
12	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prealaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Parapharyngeal Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)	*	D	D

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

18	Stated as N1, no other information	N1	RN	RN
19	Stated as N2a, no other information	N2a	RN	RN
20	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10	*	RN	RN
21	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11	*	D	RN
22	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12	*	D	D
29	Stated as N2b, no other information	N2b	RN	RN
30	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
31	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN
41	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	RN
42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D
49	Stated as N2c, no other information	N2c	RN	RN
50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
51	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
60	Stated as N2, NOS	N2NOS	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, no other information	N3	RN	RN
80	Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size table, for this site.

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Parotid Gland
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Parotid Gland
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Parotid Gland
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Parotid Gland
CS Mets at DX (Revised: 02/22/2005)

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE
10	Distant lymph node(s)	M1	D	D
40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
50	(10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases	M1	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U

Parotid Gland
CS Mets Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Parotid Gland
CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"
992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"
999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record

Parotid Gland

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Parotid Gland

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III
100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved
111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Parotid Gland

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Parotid Gland

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved
010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved
101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Parotid Gland

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

table begins on next page

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006), *continued*

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved
101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

This page left blank

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Submandibular Gland

C08.0

C08.0 Submandibular gland

Note: Laterality must be coded for C08.0.

CS Tumor Size	CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes	The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table
CS Extension	CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
CS TS/Ext-Eval	CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
CS Lymph Nodes	CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
CS Reg Nodes Eval	CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
Reg LN Pos	CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
Reg LN Exam		
CS Mets at DX		
CS Mets Eval		

Submandibular Gland

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Submandibular Gland

CS Extension (Revised: 08/14/2006)

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; non-invasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor confined to gland/duct of origin	*	L	L
30	Localized, NOS	*	L	L
35	Microscopic extraparenchymal extension ONLY	*	RE	RE
40	Another major salivary gland (parotid, sublingual) Periglandular soft/connective tissue including macroscopic extraparenchymal extension Skeletal muscle: Digastric Genioglossus Geniohyoid Hyoglossus Mylohyoid Palatoglossus Pterygoid	T3	RE	RE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

40, cont'd	Styloglossus Stylohyoid			
45	Periosteum of mandible	T4a	RE	RE
50	Mandible Nerves: Facial (7th) Lingual	T4a	RE	RE
51	External auditory meatus	T4a	D	D
52	Major blood vessels: Carotid artery Facial artery or vein Maxillary artery	T4b	RE	RE
71	Base of skull Skull, NOS	T4b	RE	D
72	Spinal accessory nerve	T4a	RE	D
77	Pterygoid plates	T4b	D	D
80	Further contiguous extension	T4b	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

* For Extension codes 10, 30, and 35 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on value of CS Tumor Size as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Submandibular Gland CS TS/Ext-Eval SEE STANDARD TABLE

Submandibular Gland

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

table begins on next page

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006), *continued*

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS	*	RN	RN
12	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level IV node Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prealaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)	*	D	D
18	Stated as N1, no other information	N1	RN	RN
19	Stated as N2a, no other information	N2a	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

20	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10	*	RN	RN
22	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12	*	D	D
29	Stated as N2b, no other information	N2b	RN	RN
30	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN
42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D
49	Stated as N2c, no other information	N2c	RN	RN
50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
60	Stated as N2, NOS	N2NOS	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, no other information	N3	RN	RN
80	Lymph nodes, NOS	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Submandibular Gland
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Submandibular Gland
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Submandibular Gland
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Submandibular Gland

CS Mets at DX (Revised: 02/22/2005)

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in the CS Lymph Nodes table because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE
10	Distant lymph node(s)	M1	D	D
40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
50	(10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases	M1	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U

Submandibular Gland

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Submandibular Gland

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"
992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"
999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record

CS Staging Schemas

Submandibular Gland**CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Submandibular Gland**CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III
100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved
111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

CS Staging Schemas

Submandibular Gland**CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Submandibular Gland**CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved
010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Submandibular Gland

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved
101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

C08.1, C08.8-C08.9

C08.1 Sublingual gland

C08.8 Overlapping lesion of major salivary glands

C08.9 Major salivary gland, NOS

Note: Laterality must be coded for C08.1.

<p>CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval</p>	<p>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p>	<p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table</p>
---	--	---

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Extension (Revised: 08/14/2006)

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; non-invasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor confined to gland/duct of origin	*	L	L
30	Localized, NOS	*	L	L
35	Microscopic extraparenchymal extension ONLY	*	RE	RE
40	Extension to: Another major salivary gland (parotid, submandibular) Periglandular soft/connective tissue including extraparenchymal extension Skeletal muscle: Digastric Pterygoid Stylohyoid	T3	RE	RE
45	Periosteum of mandible	T4a	RE	RE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

51	Mandible Nerves: Facial (7th) Lingual	T4a	RE	RE
60	Skin	T4a	D	D
62	External auditory meatus	T4a	D	D
65	Blood vessel(s): Carotid artery Facial artery or vein Maxillary artery	T4b	RE	RE
71	Base of skull Skull, NOS	T4b	RE	D
72	Spinal accessory nerve	T4a	RE	D
79	Pterygoid plates	T4b	D	D
80	Further contiguous extension	T4b	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

* For Extension codes 10, 30, and 35 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on value of CS Tumor Size as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental	*	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

10, cont'd	Cervical, NOS Mandibular, NOS Regional lymph node, NOS			
12	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level II node Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)	*	D	D
18	Stated as N1, no other information	N1	RN	RN
19	Stated as N2a, no other information	N2a	RN	RN
20	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10	*	RN	RN
22	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12	*	D	D
29	Stated as N2b, no other information	N2b	RN	RN
30	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D
49	Stated as N2c, no other information	N2c	RN	RN
50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
60	Stated as N2, NOS	N2NOS	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, no other information	N3	RN	RN
80	Lymph nodes, NOS	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10, 12, 20, 22, 30, 32, 40, 42, 49, 50, 52 and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Mets at DX (Revised: 02/22/2005)

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE
10	Distant lymph node(s)	M1	D	D

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
50	(10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases	M1	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"
992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"
999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record

CS Staging Schemas

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands**CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands**CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III
100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved
111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

CS Staging Schemas

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands**CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands**CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved
010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital

Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved
101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

Surgery Codes

Parotid and Other Unspecified Glands

Parotid Gland C079, Major Salivary Glands C080–C089

(Except for M9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

- 00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

- 10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
 - 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
 - 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
 - 13 Cryosurgery
 - 14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–14

- 20 Local tumor excision, NOS
 - 26 Polypectomy
 - 27 Excisional biopsy

Any combination of 20 or 26–27 WITH

- 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
 - 22 Electrocautery
 - 23 Cryosurgery
 - 24 Laser ablation
- [**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 24 above combine 20 Local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, or 24 Laser ablation]
- 25 Laser excision

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–27

[**SEER Note:** Codes 30-80 include major salivary gland, NOS]

- 30 Less than total parotidectomy, NOS; less than total removal of major salivary gland, NOS
 - 31 Facial nerve spared
 - 32 Facial nerve sacrificed
 - 33 Superficial lobe ONLY
 - 34 Facial nerve spared
 - 35 Facial nerve sacrificed
 - 36 Deep lobe (Total)
- [**SEER Note:** With or without superficial lobe]
- 37 Facial nerve spared
 - 38 Facial nerve sacrificed

[**SEER Note:** Codes 40-80 include submandibulectomy; submaxillectomy]

- 40 Total parotidectomy, NOS; total removal of major salivary gland, NOS
 - 41 Facial nerve spared
 - 42 Facial nerve sacrificed

- 50 Radical parotidectomy, NOS; radical removal of major salivary gland, NOS
 - 51 WITHOUT removal of temporal bone
 - 52 WITH removal of temporal bone
 - 53 WITH removal of overlying skin (requires graft or flap coverage)

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

Surgery Codes

- 80 Parotidectomy, NOS
- 90 Surgery, NOS
- 99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

**Pharynx, Tonsil, Oropharynx, Hypopharynx, Pyriform Sinus
C090-C148**

Note: For Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules: see Head and Neck (pg C-5)

This page left blank

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Tonsil, Oropharynx

C09.0-C09.1, C09.8-C09.9, C10.0, C10.2-C10.4, C10.8-C10.9

C09.0 Tonsillar fossa

C09.1 Tonsillar pillar

C09.8 Overlapping lesion of tonsil

C09.9 Tonsil, NOS (excludes lingual tonsil C02.4)

C10.0 Vallecula

C10.2 Lateral wall of oropharynx

C10.3 Posterior wall of oropharynx

C10.4 Branchial cleft (site of neoplasm)

C10.8 Overlapping lesion of oropharynx

C10.9 Oropharynx, NOS

Note 1: Laterality must be coded for C09.0, C09.1, C09.8, and C09.9.

Note 2: AJCC includes base of tongue (C01.9) with oropharynx (C09._, C10._).

<p>CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval</p>	<p>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p>	<p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table</p>
---	--	---

Tonsil, Oropharynx

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Tonsil, Oropharynx

CS Extension (Revised: 08/15/2006)

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor confined to one of the following subsites: Anterior wall (including vallecula and lingual (anterior) surface of epiglottis) One lateral wall Posterior wall	*	L	L
20	Involvement of two or more subsites: Posterior, anterior or lateral wall(s)	*	L	L

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

30	Localized, NOS	*	L	L
40	Soft palate, inferior surface including uvula, or soft palate, NOS	*	RE	RE
41	Hypopharynx NOS Pyriform sinus	*	RE	RE
42	Soft palate, superior (nasopharyngeal) surface	*	RE	RE
50	Base of tongue Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Floor of mouth Gum (gingiva)	*	RE	RE
55	Any extension coded in 10-50 WITH fixation	*	RE	RE
60	Prevertebral fascia or muscle Soft tissue of neck	*	RE	RE
62	Nasopharynx, lateral, or NOS	T4b	RE	RE
65	Larynx, NOS Medial pterygoid muscle, or pterygoid muscle, NOS Posterior surface of epiglottis	T4a	RE	RE
70	Deep extrinsic muscles of tongue: Genioglossus Geniohyoid Hyoglossus Mylohyoid Palatoglossus Styloglossus Hard palate Mandible	T4a	D	D
72	Lateral pterygoid muscle Pterygoid plates	T4b	D	D
75	Bone of skull	T4b	D	D
76	Bone	T4b	D	D
77	Carotid artery	T4b	D	D
80	Further contiguous extension: Anterior 2/3 of tongue Parotid gland	T4b	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

* For codes 10, 20, 40, 41, 42, 50, 55, and 60 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on the value of CS Tumor Size as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

CS Staging Schemas

Tonsil, Oropharynx**CS TS/Ext-Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Tonsil, Oropharynx**CS Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular Regional lymph node, NOS	*	RN	RN
11	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental	*	D	RN
12	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal	*	D	D

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

12, cont'd	Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)			
18	Stated as N1, no other information	N1	RN	RN
19	Stated as N2a, no other information	N2a	RN	RN
20	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10	*	RN	RN
21	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11	*	D	RN
22	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12	*	D	D
29	Stated as N2b, no other information	N2b	RN	RN
30	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
31	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN
41	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	RN
42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D
49	Stated as N2c, no other information	N2c	RN	RN
50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
51	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

60	Stated as N2, NOS	N2NOS	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, no other information	N3	RN	RN
80	Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Tonsil, Oropharynx
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Tonsil, Oropharynx
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Tonsil, Oropharynx
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Tonsil, Oropharynx
CS Mets at DX (Revised: 08/14/2006)

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE
10	Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Distant lymph node(s), NOS	M1	D	D
40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
50	(10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases	M1	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U

CS Staging Schemas

Tonsil, Oropharynx**CS Mets Eval**

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Tonsil, Oropharynx**CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes** (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"
992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"
999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record

Tonsil, Oropharynx**CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Tonsil, Oropharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III
100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved
111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Tonsil, Oropharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Tonsil, Oropharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved
010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved
101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Tonsil, Oropharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital

Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved
101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

This page left blank

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

C10.1

C10.1 Anterior surface of epiglottis

Note: AJCC includes lingual (anterior) surface of epiglottis (C10.1) with larynx. SEER Extent of Disease included it with oropharynx.

CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval	CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Lymph Nodes Size Table
--	--	--

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS Extension (Revised: 05/07/2004)

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor confined to anterior surface of epiglottis with normal vocal cord mobility	T1	L	L
20	Mucosa of adjacent subsite(s) of oropharynx	T2	L	L
30	Localized, NOS	T1	L	L
31	Vallecula without fixation of larynx	T2	L	L
32	Mucosa of adjacent subsite(s) of supraglottis (including posterior surface of epiglottis) without fixation of larynx	T2	RE	RE
33	Larynx, glottic or NOS, without fixation of larynx	T2	RE	RE
34	Pyramidal sinus, medial wall or NOS, without fixation of larynx	T2	RE	RE
35	Mucosa of base of tongue without fixation of larynx	T2	RE	RE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

36	Any of (10) to (35) with vocal cord fixation	T3	RE	RE
37	Paraglottic space Pre-epiglottic tissues	T3	RE	RE
38	Minor thyroid cartilage erosion (inner cortex) (see also code 67)	T3	D	D
39	Hypopharynx, NOS Postcricoid area Pyriform sinus except medial wall (see code 34)	T3	RE	RE
43	(38) + (39)	T3	D	D
45	Soft palate, inferior surface including uvula, or soft palate, NOS	T4a	RE	RE
47	Nasopharynx, NOS Soft palate, superior (nasopharyngeal) surface	T4a	RE	RE
50	Base of tongue, except mucosa (see code 35) Buccal mucosa (inner cheek) Floor of mouth Gum (gingiva)	T4a	RE	RE
62	Soft tissues of neck	T4a	RE	RE
65	Pterygoid muscle	T4a	RE	RE
66	[(38) or (43)] + any of [(45) to (65)]	T4a	D	D
67	Invasion through thyroid cartilage (see also code 38) Thyroid cartilage, NOS	T4a	D	D
68	Trachea	T4a	D	D
69	Esophagus Strap muscles Thyroid	T4a	D	D
70	Extrinsic muscles of tongue: Genioglossus Geniohyoid Hyoglossus Mylohyoid Palatoglossus Styloglossus	T4a	D	D
75	Prevertebral fascia or muscle Prevertebral space	T4b	RE	RE
77	(75) + any of [(66) to (70)]	T4b	D	D
80	Further contiguous extension, including: Anterior 2/3 of tongue Bone Encases carotid artery Hard palate Mandible Mediastinal structures Parotid gland	T4b	D	D

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Retropharyngeal Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular Regional lymph node, NOS	*	RN	RN
11	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental	*	D	RN
12	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical	*	D	D

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

12, cont'd	<p>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes)</p> <p>Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal</p> <p>Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX)</p> <p>Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)</p>			
18	Stated as N1, no other information	N1	RN	RN
19	Stated as N2a, no other information	N2a	RN	RN
20	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10	*	RN	RN
21	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11	*	D	RN
22	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12	*	D	D
29	Stated as N2b, no other information	N2b	RN	RN
30	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
31	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN
41	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	RN
42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D
49	Stated as N2c, no other information	N2c	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
51	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
60	Stated as N2, NOS	N2NOS	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, no other information	N3	RN	RN
80	Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS Mets at DX (Revised: 05/07/2004)

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE
10	Distant lymph node(s), including mediastinal	M1	D	D
40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
50	(10) + (40) (Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases)	M1	D	D

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U
----	--	----	---	---

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"
992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"
999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III
100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved
111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

table begins on next page

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006), *continued*

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved
010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved
101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

CS Staging Schemas

Anterior Surface of Epiglottis**CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital****Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved
101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

This page left blank

CS Staging Schemas

Nasopharynx

C11.0-C11.3, C11.8-C11.9

- C11.0 Superior wall of nasopharynx
- C11.1 Posterior wall of nasopharynx
- C11.2 Lateral wall of nasopharynx
- C11.3 Anterior wall of nasopharynx
- C11.8 Overlapping lesion of nasopharynx
- C11.9 Nasopharynx, NOS

CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval	CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Lymph Nodes Size Table
--	--	--

Nasopharynx

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Nasopharynx

CS Extension (Revised: 03/17/2004)

Note: Parapharyngeal involvement denotes postero-lateral infiltration of tumor beyond the pharyngobasilar fascia. Involvement of the masticator space denotes extension of tumor beyond the anterior surface of the lateral pterygoid muscle, or lateral extension beyond the postero-lateral wall of the maxillary antrum, pterygo-maxillary fissure.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor confined to one of the following subsites: Inferior wall (superior surface of soft palate) One lateral wall Posterior superior wall (vault)	T1	L	L
20	Involvement of two or more subsites: Lateral wall extending into eustachian tube/middle ear Posterior, inferior, or lateral wall(s)	T1	L	L

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

30	Confined to nasopharynx Localized, NOS	T1	L	L
40	Oropharynx Soft palate, inferior surface	T2a	RE	RE
50	Nasal cavity	T2a	RE	RE
55	Any extension coded in 10-50 WITH fixation or tumor Described only as FIXED	T4	RE	RE
56	Any extension coded in 10-50 WITH parapharyngeal extension	T2b	RE	RE
57	Hard palate	T4	D	RE
58	Pterygopalatine fossa	T4	RE	RE
60	Bone, including skull	T3	RE	RE
62	Paranasal sinus	T3	D	RE
65	Orbit	T4	RE	D
70	Brain Cranial nerves Hypopharynx Infratemporal fossa Orbit Intracranial extension, NOS	T4	D	D
75	Masticator space	T4	D	D
80	Further contiguous extension Soft tissues of the neck	T4	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

Nasopharynx

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Nasopharynx

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

table begins on next page

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/21/2006), *continued*

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Retropharyngeal Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular Regional lymph node, NOS	*	RN	RN
11	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental	*	D	RN
12	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital Supraclavicular fossa	*	D	D
18	Stated as N1, no other information	N1	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

20	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10	*	RN	RN
21	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11	*	D	RN
22	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12	*	D	D
30	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
31	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN
41	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	RN
42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D
50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
51	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
60	Stated as N2, no other information	N2	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, NOS	N3NOS	RN	RN
75	Regional lymph nodes in the supraclavicular fossa: Inferior deep cervical (scalene) Spinal accessory (posterior cervical) Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) (See Note 4)	N3b	D	D
80	Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table, for this site.

Nasopharynx

CS Reg Nodes Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Nasopharynx
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Nasopharynx
Reg LN Exam
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Nasopharynx
CS Mets at DX (Revised: 08/15/2006)

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE
10	Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Distant lymph nodes, NOS	M1	D	D
40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
50	(10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases	M1	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U

Nasopharynx
CS Mets Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Nasopharynx
CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"
999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record

Nasopharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Nasopharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved
111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Nasopharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Nasopharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved
010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved
101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Nasopharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

This page left blank

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

C12.9, C13.0-C13.2, C13.8-C13.9

C12.9 Pyriform sinus

C13.0 Postcricoid region

C13.1 Hypopharyngeal aspect of aryepiglottic fold

C13.2 Posterior wall of hypopharynx

C13.8 Overlapping lesion of hypopharynx

C13.9 Hypopharynx, NOS

<p>CS Tumor Size CS Extension CS TS/Ext-Eval CS Lymph Nodes CS Reg Nodes Eval Reg LN Pos Reg LN Exam CS Mets at DX CS Mets Eval</p>	<p>CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck</p>	<p>The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage Extension Size Table Lymph Nodes Size Table</p>
---	--	---

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

CS Extension (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note: If fixation of hemilarynx or larynx code to 55 not 51.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial	Tis	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor confined to one of the following subsites: Laryngopharynx Postcricoid area Posterior pharyngeal wall Pyriform sinus	*	L	L
20	Tumor involves adjacent subsite(s) (listed in code 10) WITHOUT fixation	*	L	L
30	Localized, NOS	*	L	L
40	Oropharynx	*	RE	RE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

50	Larynx	*	RE	RE
51	Any of codes 10-40 WITH fixation of tumor or fixation, NOS	*	RE	RE
55	Fixation of hemilarynx or larynx	T3	RE	RE
60	Soft tissues of neck including Prelaryngeal strap muscles and subcutaneous fat	T4a	RE	RE
61	Esophagus	T4a	RE	RE
62	Thyroid gland	T4a	D	RE
63	Cricoid cartilage Thyroid cartilage	T4a	D	RE
64	Prevertebral fascia/muscle(s)	T4b	RE	RE
65	Carotid artery	T4b	D	RE
66	Hyoid bone	T4a	D	D
70	Mediastinal structures	T4b	D	D
80	Further contiguous extension	T4b	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	T0	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	TX	U	U

* For Extension codes 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, and 51 ONLY, the T category is assigned based on value of CS Tumor Size as shown in the Extension Size Table for this site.

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

CS TS/Ext-Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	N0	NONE	NONE
10	Single positive ipsilateral regional node:	*	RN	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

10, cont'd	Level II node Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Upper deep cervical Upper jugular Level III node Middle deep cervical Mid jugular Level IV node Lower deep cervical Lower jugular Retropharyngeal Cervical, NOS Deep cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Mandibular Regional lymph node, NOS			
11	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level I node Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Level VI node Anterior deep cervical Laterotracheal Paralaryngeal Paratracheal Prelaryngeal Pretracheal Recurrent laryngeal Other groups Intraparotid Parapharyngeal Periparotid Retropharyngeal Sub-occipital	*	D	RN
12	Single positive ipsilateral regional node: Level V node Posterior cervical Posterior triangle (spinal accessory and transverse cervical) (upper, middle, and lower corresponding to the levels that define upper, middle, and lower jugular nodes) Level VII node Upper mediastinum (for other mediastinal nodes see CS Mets at DX) Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)	*	D	D
18	Stated as N1, no other information	N1	RN	RN
19	Stated as N2a, no other information	N2a	RN	RN
20	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 10	*	RN	RN
21	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 11	*	D	RN

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

22	Multiple positive ipsilateral nodes listed in code 12	*	D	D
29	Stated as N2b, no other information	N2b	RN	RN
30	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
31	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
32	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive ipsilateral node(s), not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
40	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	RN	RN
41	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	RN
42	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive bilateral or contralateral nodes	*	D	D
49	Stated as N2c, no other information	N2c	RN	RN
50	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 10: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	RN	RN
51	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 11: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	RN
52	Regional lymph nodes as listed in code 12: Positive node(s), not stated if ipsilateral, or bilateral, or contralateral, AND not stated if single or multiple	*	D	D
60	Stated as N2, NOS	N2NOS	RN	RN
70	Stated as N3, no other information	N3	RN	RN
80	Lymph nodes, NOS, no other information	*	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NX	U	U

* For codes 10-12, 20-22, 30-32, 40-42, 50-52, and 80 ONLY, the N category is assigned based on the value of Site-Specific Factor 1, Size of Lymph Nodes, using the extra table, Lymph Nodes Size Table for this site.

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx
CS Reg Nodes Eval
SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx
Reg LN Pos
SEE STANDARD TABLE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

CS Mets at DX (Revised: 08/14/2006)

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	M0	NONE	NONE
10	Distant lymph node(s) Mediastinal Distant lymph node(s), NOS	M1	D	D
40	Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Distant metastasis, NOS Carcinomatosis	M1	D	D
50	(10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases	M1	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	MX	U	U

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

CS Mets Eval

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"
992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"
999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III
100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved
111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

CS Staging Schemas

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx**CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved
010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved
101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Pyriform Sinus, Hypopharynx, Laryngopharynx**CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck** (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved
010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

This page left blank

CS Staging Schemas

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

C14.0, C14.2, C14.8

C14.0 Pharynx, NOS

C14.2 Waldeyer ring

C14.8 Overlapping lesion of lip, oral cavity and pharynx

Note: AJCC does not define TNM staging for this site.

CS Tumor Size	CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes	The following tables are available at the collaborative staging website: Histology Exclusion Table AJCC Stage
CS Extension	CS Site-Specific Factor 1 - Size of Lymph Nodes	
CS TS/Ext-Eval	CS Site-Specific Factor 2 - Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
CS Lymph Nodes	CS Site-Specific Factor 3 - Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
CS Reg Nodes Eval	CS Site-Specific Factor 4 - Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
Reg LN Pos	CS Site-Specific Factor 5 - Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
Reg LN Exam	CS Site-Specific Factor 6 - Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck	
CS Mets at DX		
CS Mets Eval		

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Tumor Size

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Extension (Revised: 12/10/2003)

Note: Definition of Adjacent Structures: Connective tissues large enough to be given a specific name would be considered adjacent structures. For example, the brachial artery has a name, as does the broad ligament. Continuous tumor growth from one organ into an adjacent named structure would be coded to less than 60 in the schemes for ill-defined or non-specific sites.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	In situ; noninvasive; intraepithelial	NA	IS	IS
10	Invasive tumor confined to site of origin	NA	L	L
30	Localized, NOS	NA	L	L
40	More than one region of pharynx involved (oropharynx, nasopharynx, hypopharynx)	NA	RE	RE
50	Pharynx and oral cavity involved	NA	RE	RE
55	Any of codes 10-50 WITH fixation	NA	RE	RE

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

60	Extension to adjacent structures (See note)	NA	RE	RE
80	Further contiguous extension	NA	D	D
95	No evidence of primary tumor	NA	U	U
99	Unknown extension Primary tumor cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NA	U	U

Pharynx, NOS, and Other III-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS TS/Ext-Eval (Revised: 03/17/2004)

Code	Description	Staging Basis
9	Not applicable for this site	NA

Pharynx, NOS, and Other III-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/15/2006)

Note 1: For head and neck schemas, this field includes all lymph nodes defined as Levels I-VII and Other by AJCC. The complete definitions are provided in the General Instructions.

Note 2: For head and neck schemas, additional information about lymph nodes (size of involved nodes, extracapsular extension, and levels involved) is coded in Site-Specific Factors 1-6.

Note 3: If laterality of lymph nodes is not specified, assume nodes are ipsilateral. Midline nodes are considered ipsilateral.

Note 4: For head and neck cancers, if lymph nodes are described only as "supraclavicular", try to determine if they are in Level IV (deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the lower jugular chain) or Level V (in the posterior triangle, inferior to the transverse cervical artery) and code appropriately. If the specific level cannot be determined, consider them as Level V nodes.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	None; no regional lymph node involvement	NA	NONE	NONE
10	Regional lymph node(s) bilateral and/or contralateral: Cervical, NOS Internal jugular, NOS Deep cervical, NOS: Lower, NOS Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid) Middle Upper, NOS: Jugulodigastric (subdigastric) Mandibular, NOS Submandibular (submaxillary) Submental Paratracheal Recurrent laryngeal nerve chain Pre-laryngeal Delphian node Retropharyngeal Regional lymph node(s), NOS	NA	RN	RN
12	Regional lymph node(s) bilateral and/or contralateral: Supraclavicular, NOS (See Note 4)	NA	D	D

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

80	Lymph nodes, NOS	NA	RN	RN
99	Unknown; not stated Regional lymph node(s) cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NA	U	U

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Reg Nodes Eval (Revised: 03/17/2004)

Code	Description	Staging Basis
9	Not applicable for this site	NA

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

Reg LN Pos

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

Reg LN Exam

SEE STANDARD TABLE

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Mets at DX (Revised: 02/22/2005)

Note: Supraclavicular and transverse cervical lymph nodes are now coded in CS Lymph Nodes because they are categorized as N rather than M in AJCC TNM. Any cases coded to 10 or 50 can be reviewed and recoded. The volume of cases affected should be small.

Code	Description	TNM	SS77	SS2000
00	No; none	NA	NONE	NONE
10	Distant lymph node(s), including: Mediastinal	NA	D	D
40	Distant metastasis, NOS Distant metastases except distant lymph node(s) (code 10) Carcinomatosis	NA	D	D
50	(10) + (40) Distant lymph node(s) plus other distant metastases	NA	D	D
99	Unknown if distant metastasis Distant metastasis cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record	NA	U	U

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Mets Eval (Revised: 03/17/2004)

Code	Description	Staging Basis
9	Not applicable for this site	NA

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Site-Specific Factor 1 Size of Lymph Nodes (Revised: 08/18/2006)

Note: Code the largest diameter, whether measured clinically or pathologically, of any involved regional lymph node(s). Do not code the size of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX.

Code	Description
000	No involved regional nodes
001-988	001-988 millimeters (code exact size in millimeters)
989	989 millimeters or larger
990	Microscopic focus or foci only, no size of focus given
991	Described as "less than 1cm"
992	Described as "less than 2cm" or "greater than 1cm" or "between 1cm and 2cm"
993	Described as "less than 3cm" or "greater than 2cm" or "between 2cm and 3cm"
994	Described as "less than 4cm" or "greater than 3cm" or "between 3cm and 4cm"
995	Described as "less than 5cm" or "greater than 4cm" or "between 4cm and 5cm"
996	Described as "less than 6cm" or "greater than 5cm" or "between 5cm and 6cm"
997	Described as "more than 6cm"
999	Regional lymph node(s) involved, size not stated Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved Not documented in patient record

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Site-Specific Factor 2 Extracapsular Extension, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/22/2006)

Note 1: Code the status of extracapsular extension whether assessed clinically or pathologically of any involved regional lymph node(s) coded in the CS Lymph Nodes field. Do not code the status of any nodes coded in CS Mets at DX. Pathologic assessment takes priority over clinical assessment.

Note 2: According to AJCC (page 24), "Imaging studies showing amorphous spiculated margins of involved nodes or involvement of internodal fat resulting in loss of normal oval-to-round nodal shape strongly suggest extracapsular (extranodal) tumor spread; however, pathologic examination is necessary for documentation of the extent of such disease."

Code	Description
000	No extracapsular extension
001	Extracapsular extension clinically, not assessed pathologically Nodes described as "fixed", not assessed pathologically
005	Extracapsular extension present pathologically
888	Not applicable; no lymph node involvement
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Site-Specific Factor 3 Levels I-III, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels I, II, or III
100	Level I lymph node(s) involved
010	Level II lymph node(s) involved
001	Level III lymph node(s) involved
110	Level I and II lymph nodes involved
101	Level I and III lymph nodes involved
011	Level II and III lymph nodes involved
111	Level I, II and III lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Site-Specific Factor 4 Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels IV or V or retropharyngeal
100	Level IV lymph node(s) involved
010	Level V lymph node(s) involved
001	Retropharyngeal nodes involved
110	Level IV and V lymph nodes involved
101	Level IV and retropharyngeal nodes involved
011	Level V and retropharyngeal nodes involved
111	Level IV and V and retropharyngeal lymph nodes involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record
-----	---

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Site-Specific Factor 5 Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No lymph node involvement in Levels VI or VII or facial nodes
100	Level VI lymph node(s) involved
010	Level VII lymph node(s) involved
001	Facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph node(s) involved
110	Level VI and VII lymph nodes involved
101	Level VI and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
011	Level VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) nodes involved
111	Level VI and VII and facial (buccinator, nasolabial) lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

Pharynx, NOS, and Other Ill-Defined Oral Cavity Sites

CS Site-Specific Factor 6 Parapharyngeal, Parotid, Preauricular, and Sub-Occipital

Lymph Nodes, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck (Revised: 08/21/2006)

Note: Site-Specific Factors 3-6 are used to code the presence or absence of lymph node involvement in each of 7 different levels and other groups defined by AJCC. The definitions of the levels are the same for all applicable head and neck sites. One digit is used to represent lymph nodes of a single level, with the three digits of Site-Specific Factor 3 representing lymph nodes of, respectively, Levels I-III; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 4 representing lymph nodes of Levels IV and V and the retropharyngeal nodes; the digits of Site-Specific Factor 5 representing lymph nodes of Levels VI and VII and the facial nodes; and the digits of Site-Specific Factor 6 representing the remaining Other groups as defined by AJCC. In each digit, a code 1 means Yes, the nodes are involved.

Code	Description
000	No parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), or sub-occipital lymph node involvement
100	Parapharyngeal lymph node(s) involved

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

CS Staging Schemas

010	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph node(s) involved
001	Sub-occipital lymph node(s) involved
110	Parapharyngeal and parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) lymph nodes involved
101	Parapharyngeal and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
011	Parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid) and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
111	Parapharyngeal, parotid (preauricular, periparotid, and/or intraparotid), and sub-occipital lymph nodes involved
999	Unknown if regional lymph node(s) involved, not stated Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed Not documented in patient record

This page left blank

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

Surgery Codes

Pharynx

Tonsil C090–C099, Oropharynx C100–C109, Nasopharynx C110–C119

Pyriiform Sinus C129, Hypopharynx C130–C139, Pharynx C140

(Except for M9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS

11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)

13 Cryosurgery

14 Laser

15 Stripping

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–15

20 Local tumor excision, NOS

26 Polypectomy

27 Excisional biopsy

Any combination of 20 or 26–27 WITH

21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

22 Electrocautery

23 Cryosurgery

24 Laser ablation

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 24 and 28 above combine 20 Local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, or 24 Laser ablation]

25 Laser excision

28 Stripping

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–28

30 Pharyngectomy, NOS

31 Limited/partial pharyngectomy; tonsillectomy, bilateral tonsillectomy

32 Total pharyngectomy

40 Pharyngectomy WITH laryngectomy OR removal of contiguous bone tissue, NOS

(does NOT include total mandibular resection)

[**SEER Notes:** Code 40 includes mandibulectomy (marginal, segmental, hemi-, and/or laryngectomy) NOS Contiguous bone tissue refers to the mandible]

41 WITH laryngectomy (laryngopharyngectomy)

42 WITH bone [mandibulectomy]

43 WITH both 41 and 42

[**SEER Notes:** Use code 40 when the patient had a pharyngectomy and maybe some sort of mandibulectomy and/or maybe a laryngectomy, but the exact procedures are not clear. Use code 41 when the patient had pharyngectomy and laryngectomy but no mandibulectomy Use code 42 when the patient had pharyngectomy and mandibulectomy but no laryngectomy Use code 43 when it is certain that the patient had both a mandibulectomy and laryngectomy in addition to the pharyngectomy]

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

Surgery Codes

- 50 Radical pharyngectomy (includes total mandibular resection), NOS
 - 51 WITHOUT laryngectomy
 - 52 WITH laryngectomy
- 90 Surgery, NOS
- 99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual 2007

Surgery Codes

All Other Sites

C142–C148, C170–C179, C239, C240–C249, C260–C269, C300–C301, C310–C319, C339, C379, C380–C388, C390–C399, C480–C488, C510–C519, C529, C570–C579, C589, C600–C609, C630–C639, C680–C689, C690–C699, C740–C749, C750–C759

(Except for M9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS

11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)

13 Cryosurgery

14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10–14

20 Local tumor excision, NOS

26 Polypectomy

27 Excisional biopsy

Any combination of 20 or 26–27 WITH

21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)

22 Electrocautery

23 Cryosurgery

24 Laser ablation

[**SEER Note:** Codes 21 to 24 above combine 20 local tumor excision, 26 Polypectomy or 27 Excisional biopsy with 21 PDT, 22 Electrocautery, 23 Cryosurgery, or 24 Laser ablation]

25 Laser excision

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20–27

30 Simple/partial surgical removal of primary site

40 Total surgical removal of primary site; enucleation

41 Total enucleation (for eye surgery only)

50 Surgery stated to be “debulking”

60 Radical surgery

Partial or total removal of the primary site WITH a resection in continuity (partial or total removal) with other organs

[**SEER Note:** In continuity with or “en bloc” means that all of the tissues were removed during the same procedure, but not necessarily in a single specimen]

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

This page left blank